END-USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

## Contents

**What’s New** .................................................................................................................................................. 6

**Introducing Turbonomic** ............................................................................................................................ 9

How Turbonomic Works ................................................................................................................................. 9

The Desired State .......................................................................................................................................... 10

The Market and Virtual Currency ................................................................................................................ 11

The Economic Scheduling Engine .............................................................................................................. 12

The Turbonomic Supply Chain ....................................................................................................................... 12

**Turbonomic Minimum Requirements** ...................................................................................................... 13

**Turbonomic Targets** ................................................................................................................................ 15

**Turbonomic Actions** .................................................................................................................................. 22

Action Categories ........................................................................................................................................... 27

Cloud VMs with Failed Sizing ....................................................................................................................... 29

**Resource Descriptions** ............................................................................................................................. 29

**Logging In to Turbonomic** ....................................................................................................................... 34

**The Home Page** ....................................................................................................................................... 35

Hybrid View .................................................................................................................................................... 36

ON-PREM View .............................................................................................................................................. 37

CLOUD View ................................................................................................................................................ 39

Tracking Cloud Cost ..................................................................................................................................... 41

Resizing Cloud Workloads ............................................................................................................................ 42

Reserved Instances (RIs) ............................................................................................................................... 43

**Supply Chain of Entities** .......................................................................................................................... 46

Supply Chain - Load Balancer ....................................................................................................................... 49

Supply Chain - Virtual Application ............................................................................................................... 50

Supply Chain - Application ........................................................................................................................... 52

Supply Chain - Application Server ............................................................................................................... 54

Supply Chain - Business Application .......................................................................................................... 57

Supply Chain - Database Server .................................................................................................................. 59

Supply Chain - Container .............................................................................................................................. 62

Supply Chain - ContainerPod ....................................................................................................................... 63

Supply Chain - Virtual Machine .................................................................................................................. 65

Supply Chain - Virtual Datacenter ............................................................................................................... 69

Supply Chain - Host ..................................................................................................................................... 74

Supply Chain - Storage .................................................................................................................................. 77
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Supply Chain - Disk Array</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supply Chain - Storage Controller</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supply Chain - IO Module</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supply Chain - Fabric Interconnect</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supply Chain - Chassis</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supply Chain - Domain</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supply Chain - Datacenter</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supply Chain - VPod</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supply Chain - DPod</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Working With a Scoped View</strong></td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scoping the Turbonomic Session</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overview Charts</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details View</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope Policies</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entity Placement Constraints</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Entities</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pending Actions List</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navigating With the Supply Chain</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viewing Cluster Headroom</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plans: Looking to the Future</strong></td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan Management</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Up User Plan Scenarios</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating a Custom Scenario</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planning to Alleviate Pressure on a Cluster</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planning a Migration to the Cloud</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planning Cloud Optimization</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring Nightly Plans</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Place: Reserve and Deploy Workload</strong></td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dashboards: Focused Views</strong></td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executive Dashboards</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On-Prem Executive Dashboard</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloud Executive Dashboard</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating and Editing Custom Dashboards</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating and Editing Chart Widgets</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chart Types</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actions and Impact Chart Types</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Contents

- Status and Details Chart Types ................................................................. 172
- Cloud Chart Types .................................................................................. 180
- On-Prem Chart Types .............................................................................. 191

### Reports: Viewing Historical Data .......................................................... 194
- Viewing Reports ....................................................................................... 195
- Scheduling Reports ................................................................................ 197

### Configuring Targets .............................................................................. 199
- AWS Billing Family Recognition ............................................................. 203

### Setting Up Business Rules ................................................................. 205
- Creating Groups ...................................................................................... 206
- Budgets and Costs .................................................................................. 209
  - Cloud Profile ....................................................................................... 209
  - Hardware Costs ................................................................................ 212
  - Azure Rate Cards ................................................................................ 212
  - Price Adjustments .............................................................................. 215
- Setting Policies ......................................................................................... 223
  - Placement Policies .............................................................................. 224
  - Automation Policies ............................................................................ 229

### Templates: Resource Allocations for New Entities .............................. 280
- Creating Templates ................................................................................ 280
- VM Template Settings ........................................................................... 282
- Host Template Settings .......................................................................... 284
- Storage Template Settings ..................................................................... 284
- Container Template Settings .................................................................. 284

### Email and Trap Notifications ................................................................. 285
- Email Settings ......................................................................................... 285
- Notification Settings .............................................................................. 288

### Administrative Tasks ............................................................................ 292
- Managing User Accounts ........................................................................ 292
  - Configuring a Group for SSO Authentication ...................................... 299
- Maintenance: Proxies, Logging, and Troubleshooting .......................... 301
- Updating Turbonomic ............................................................................ 303
- License Configuration ............................................................................ 304
What's New

This release of Turbonomic includes the following new features:

- **Price Adjustment for Cloud Environments**
  
  This release improves how we handle price adjustments. In previous versions, you could configure discounts for specific billing groups in your cloud environment. This release extends that feature to enable more general price adjustments, where you can specify a discount or an increase in cost. Further, you can drill into line items and override the overall adjustment as necessary.
  
  See [Price Adjustments (page 215)](#).

- **Azure Rate Cards**
  
  For Azure environments, Turbonomic uses the published Microsoft rates to calculate costs for templates and services in the cloud. However, your environment can run workloads on an Azure environment that is managed by a specific Cloud Solution Provider (CSP). That CSP can offer its own price list for the Azure services. In this case, you can upload the CSP price list to create a Rate Card, and configure Turbonomic to use those rates for the affected Azure subscriptions.
  
  See [Azure Rate Cards (page 212)](#).

- **Cloud Planning Improvements**
  
  This release introduces the following features to enhance the value of running plans in your cloud environment.
  
  - **Plan Migrations to Azure Cloud Solution Providers**
    
    This release introduces Azure Rate Cards. With these rate cards, when you plan a migration to a CSP that uses its own price list, the plan calculates the true cost of that migration. In this way, you can use a Migrate to Cloud plan to illustrate the value of moving to a subscription hosted by the given CSP.
    
    See [Migrating to Azure CSPs (page 129)](#).
  
  - **Plan migration of Physical Hosts to the Cloud**
    
    With the introduction of the BareMetal target, you can configure a set of physical hosts for Turbonomic to discover, and treat as VMs. Then you can run a plan that migrates those VMs to the cloud.
    
    See "Bare Metal Hypervisor" in the Target Configuration Guide.
What's New

◦ Include Azure RI Purchases in Migrate to Cloud Plans

   Turbonomic can now recommend Azure RI purchases in migration plans.

◦ Consider Future RI Purchases in Optimize Cloud Plans

   When you run the Optimize Cloud plan, you can now set a purchase date for RIs. This date reflects when you intend to execute the recommendations that the plan calculates. As the plan calculates RI purchases, it will not include RIs that would be expired before that purchase date.

   See Planning Cloud Optimization (page 138).

◦ Scope to Billing Family in Optimize Cloud Plans

   With this release you can limit an optimization plan to a single AWS billing family. The plan scope includes all the accounts in that family, and the plan calculates RI purchases through the billing family's master account.

• New analysis policies for management on the public cloud

   This release includes new policy settings to improve the way Turbonomic calculates actions for workloads on the public cloud. For more information, see Analysis Policies: VMs (page 269).

   ◦ Consistent Resizing

      When you turn on Consistent Resizing for a group of VMs, Turbonomic resizes all the group members to the same size, such that they all support the top utilization of each resource commodity in the group. In addition, Turbonomic discovers the members of Azure Availability Sets and AWS Autoscaling groups, and automatically enables Consistent Resizing for these groups.

   ◦ Instance Store Aware Scaling

      For AWS environments, the template for your workload determines whether the workload can use an instance store, and it determines the instance store capacity. With this setting, you can ensure that resize actions respect the instance store requirements for your workloads.

• Set Turbonomic Scope to AWS Billing Families

   As Turbonomic discovers AWS billing families, it includes them as a type of group in the Search page. You can navigate to Search, choose Billing Families, and then set the Turbonomic scope to one or more billing families.

• Improved Discovery of Database Information

   For AppDynamics and MS SQL targets, Turbonomic now discovers the database type (MS SQL, MySQl, Oracle), and when possible it discovers the database version as it discovers database entities. You can filter by this information when creating groups, and Turbonomic displays this information in the user interface.

• Improved Charts in the User Interface

   ◦ Improvements for the Cloud Cost Comparison Chart

      Turbonomic analyzes your cloud environment to calculate the best placement and scaling of workloads, and to recommend the actions to optimize your environment. The Cloud Cost Comparison chart compares your current costs with the costs you would see if you execute the pending actions. We have redesigned the chart to make it easier to read, and to display more relevant information.

      You can see this chart in the Cloud View of the Home Page, the Optimize Cloud plan results, and the Migrate to Cloud plan results.

   ◦ Display Cost in RI Utilization Charts
RI Utilization charts show utilization of your RI inventory in terms of Normalized Factor Units (nfu). With this release the charts include an option to display utilization in terms of dollar amount.

- Workload Resize and Move Improvements on the Cloud
  - Workload Processor Compatibility
    Turbonomic recognizes processor types that you currently use for your workloads. For move or resize actions, Turbonomic keeps your workloads on instance types with compatible processors. For more information, see Azure Template Requirements (page 67) and AWS Template Requirements (page 68).
  - Recovery for Failed Resize and Move Actions
    For workload on the public cloud, if Turbonomic tries to execute a move or a resize action but the action fails, then Turbonomic places the affected VM in a special group named Cloud VMs with Failed Sizing. You can review the group, and inspect individual VMs to troubleshoot the cause of the failure. As soon as Turbonomic successfully executes a move or resize on a VM in this group, it then removes the VM from the group. For more information, see Cloud VMs with Failed Sizing (page 29).

- More Supported Versions of Hypervisor Platforms and Targets
  With this release, Turbonomic supports installation on VMware vCenter Server 6.7.
  In addition, this release adds target support for Microsoft SQL Server 2017.

- New Targets
  This release of Turbonomic introduces the following new targets:
  - Dynatrace Server
    Turbonomic now supports discovery of applications that are managed by the Dynatrace platform. Turbonomic includes the discovered information about these applications in its calculations for VM actions.
    See "Dynatrace" in the Target Configuration Guide.
  - Bare Metal Hypervisor
    You can configure Turbonomic to discover specific physical hosts that you have in your on-prem environment. When Turbonomic discovers them, it treats them as special host-prxy VMs. Turbonomic cannot execute any real-time actions on these host proxies. But you can run plans to migrate these proxies onto the public cloud.
    See "Bare Metal Hypervisor" in the Target Configuration Guide.
Introducing Turbonomic

Thank you for choosing the Turbonomic platform, the premier solution for intelligent workload management of cloud and virtual environments. Turbonomic maintains your environment within the desired state — operating conditions that achieve the following conflicting goals at the same time:

- Assured application performance
  - Prevent bottlenecks, provision physical resources, upsize VMs, prioritize workload.

- Efficient use of resources
  - Consolidate workload, downsize VMs, prevent VM sprawl and dormant VMs.

Turbonomic is a server application running on VM that you install on your network. You then assign Virtual Management services running on your network to be Turbonomic targets. Turbonomic discovers the devices each target manages, and then performs analysis, anticipates risks to performance or efficiency, and recommends actions you can take to avoid problems before they occur.

How Turbonomic Works

To keep your infrastructure in the desired state, Turbonomic performs Intelligent Workload Management. This is an ongoing process that solves the problem of assuring application performance while simultaneously achieving the most efficient use of resources that is possible.

This is not a simple problem to solve. Intelligent Workload Management has to consider many different resources, numerous control points for each device, and how devices and resources are used in relation to each other. As you add devices to your infrastructure, the factors for each decision increase exponentially. On top of that, the environment is constantly changing — to stay in the desired state, you are constantly trying to hit a moving target.

To perform Intelligent Workload Management, Turbonomic models the environment as a market made up of buyers and sellers. These buyers and sellers make up a supply chain that represents tiers of devices in your inventory.

See the The Supply Chain (page 46) for a visual layout of the buyer and seller relationships.
Introducing Turbonomic

Turbonomic uses *Virtual Currency* to give a budget to buyers and assign cost to resources. This virtual currency assigns value across all tiers of your environment, making it possible to compare the cost of application transactions with the cost of space on a disk or physical space in a data center.

The price that a seller charges for a resource changes according to the seller’s supply. As demand increases, prices increase. As prices change, buyers and sellers react. Buyers are free to look for other sellers that offer a better price, and sellers can duplicate themselves (open new storefronts) to meet increasing demand. Turbonomic uses its *Economic Scheduling Engine* to analyze the market and make these decisions. The effect is an invisible hand that dynamically guides your IT infrastructure to the optimal use of resources.

To get the most out of Turbonomic, you should understand how it models your environment, the kind of analysis it performs, and the desired state it works to achieve.

The Desired State

![Diagram of desired state](chart.png)

The goal of Intelligent Workload Management is to assure performance while maintaining efficient use of resources. When performance and efficiency are both maintained, you are in the desired state. You can measure performance as a function of delay, where zero delay gives the ideal QoS for a given service. Efficient use of resources is a function of utilization where 100% utilization of a resource is the ideal for the most efficient utilization.

If you plot delay and utilization, the result is a curve that shows a correlation between utilization and delay. Up to a point, as you increase utilization, the increase in delay is slight. There comes a point on the curve where a slight increase in utilization results in an unacceptable increase in delay. On the other hand, there is a point in the curve where a reduction in utilization doesn’t yield a meaningful increase in QoS. The desired state lies within these points on the curve.

You could set a threshold to post an alert whenever the upper limit is crossed. In that case, you would never react to a problem until delay has already become unacceptable. To avoid that late reaction you could set the threshold to post an alert before the upper limit is crossed. In that case, you guarantee QoS at the cost of over-provisioning — you increase operating costs and never achieve efficient utilization.

Instead of responding after a threshold is crossed, Turbonomic analyzes the operating conditions and constantly recommends actions to keep the entire environment within the desired state. If you execute these actions (or let Turbonomic execute them for you), the environment will maintain operating conditions that assure performance for your customers, while ensuring the lowest possible cost thanks to efficient utilization of your resources.
The Market and Virtual Currency

To perform Intelligent Workload Management, Turbonomic models the environment as a market, and uses market analysis to manage resource supply and demand. For example, bottlenecks form when local workload demand exceeds the local capacity — in other words, when demand exceeds supply. By modeling the environment as a market, Turbonomic can use economic solutions to efficiently redistribute the demand or increase the supply.

Turbonomic uses two sets of abstraction to model the environment:

- Modeling the physical and virtual IT stack as a service supply chain
  
  The supply chain models devices in your environment as managed entities. These include applications, VMs, host machines (physical machines, or PMs), storage, and data centers. Every entity is a buyer, a seller, or both. A host machine buys physical space, power, and cooling from a data center. The physical machine sells host resources such as CPU cycles and memory to VMs. In turn, VMs buy host services, and then sell their resources (VMem and VCPU) to applications.

  See the The Supply Chain (page 46) for a visual layout of the buyer and seller relationships.

- Using virtual currency to represent delay or QoS degradation, and to manage the supply and demand of services along the modeled supply chain
  
  The system uses virtual currency to value these buy/sell transactions. Each managed entity has a running budget — the entity adds to its budget by providing resources to consumers, and the entity draws from its budget to pay for the resources it consumes. The price of a resource is driven by its utilization — the more demand for a resource, the higher its price.

These abstractions open the whole spectrum of the environment to a single mode of analysis — market analysis. Resources and services can be priced to reflect changes in supply and demand, and pricing can drive resource allocation decisions. For example, a bottleneck (excess demand over supply) results in rising prices for the given resource. Applications competing for the same resource can lower their costs by shifting their workloads to other resource suppliers. As a result, utilization for that resource even out across the environment and the bottleneck is resolved.
The Economic Scheduling Engine

Turbonomic tracks price for resources in terms of the Utilization Index (UI). The higher this index for a resource, the more heavily the resource is utilized, the greater the delay for consumers of that resource, and the greater the risk to your QoS. Turbonomic constantly works to keep the UI within acceptable bounds.

You can think of UI as the cost for a resource — Turbonomic works to keep the cost at a competitive level. This is not simply a matter of responding to threshold conditions. Turbonomic analyzes the full range of buyer/seller relationships, and each buyer constantly seeks out the most economical transaction that is available.

This last point is crucial to understanding Turbonomic. The virtual environment is dynamic, with constant changes to workload that correspond with the varying requests your customers make of your applications and services. By examining each buyer/seller relationship, the Economic Scheduling Engine arrives at the optimal workload distribution for the current state of the environment. In this way, Turbonomic constantly drives your environment toward the desired state.

NOTE:
The default Turbonomic configuration is ready to use in many environments. However, you can fine-tune the configuration to address special services and resources in your environment. Turbonomic provides a full range of policies that you can set to control how the software manages specific groups of entities. Before you make such policy settings, you should understand default Turbonomic operation. For more information about policies, see Setting Up Business Rules (page 205).

The Turbonomic Supply Chain

Turbonomic models your environment as a market of buyers and sellers. It discovers different types of entities in your environment via the targets you have configured for your installation. Discovery maps these entities to the supply chain so Turbonomic can monitor them and manage the workloads they support. For example, for a hypervisor target Turbonomic discovers VMs, the PMs and datastores that provide resources to the VMs, and the applications that use VM resources. The entities in your environment form a chain of supply and demand where some entities provide resources while others consume the supplied resources.

For information about specific members of the supply chain, see The Supply Chain (page 46).

Supply Chain Terminology

Turbonomic introduces specific terms to express IT resources and utilization in terms of supply and demand. These terms are largely intuitive, but you should understand how they relate to the issues and activities that are common for IT management.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term:</th>
<th>Definition:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Commodity</td>
<td>The basic building block of Turbonomic supply and demand. All the resources that Turbonomic monitors are commodities. For example, the CPU capacity or memory that a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Term: Composed Of

The resources or commodities that make up the given service. For example, in the user interface you might see that a certain VM is *composed of* commodities such as one or more physical CPUs, an Ethernet interface, and physical memory.

Contrast *Composed Of* with *Consumes*, where consumption refers to the commodities the VM has bought. Also contrast *Composed Of* with the commodities a service offers for sale. A physical machine might include four CPUs in its composition, but it offers CPU Cycles as a single commodity.

### Term: Consumes

The services and commodities a service has bought. A service *consumes* other commodities. For example, a VM consumes the commodities offered by a physical machine, and an application consumes commodities from one or more VMs. In the user interface you can explore the services that provide the commodities the current service consumes.

### Term: Entity

A buyer or seller in the market. For example, a VM or a datastore is an entity.

### Term: Environment

The totality of data center, network, physical machine, storage, VM, and application resources that you are monitoring.

### Term: Inventory

The list of all entities in your environment.

### Term: Utilization Index

A measure of the risk to Quality of Service (QoS) that a consumer will experience. The higher the UI on a provider, the more risk to QoS for any consumer of that provider’s services.

For example, a physical machine provides host services to one or more VMs. The higher the UI on the provider, the more likely that the VMs will experience QoS degradation.

In most cases, for optimal operation the UI on a provider should not go into double digits.

---

**Turbonomic Minimum Requirements**

The following are minimum requirements to run Turbonomic:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Supported Technology</th>
<th>Storage Requirements</th>
<th>Memory</th>
<th>CPUs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VMware:</td>
<td>500 GB or greater</td>
<td>16 GB</td>
<td>4 vCPUs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vCenter versions 5.5, 6.0, 6.5, and 6.7</td>
<td><strong>NOTE:</strong> Can be thin provisioned depending on the storage requirements.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMware:</td>
<td>500 GB or greater</td>
<td>16 GB</td>
<td>4 vCPUs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vCenter versions 5.5, 6.0, 6.5, and 6.7</td>
<td><strong>NOTE:</strong> Can be thin provisioned depending on the storage requirements.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMware:</td>
<td>500 GB or greater</td>
<td>16 GB</td>
<td>4 vCPUs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vCenter versions 5.5, 6.0, 6.5, and 6.7</td>
<td><strong>NOTE:</strong> Can be thin provisioned depending on the storage requirements.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMware:</td>
<td>500 GB or greater</td>
<td>16 GB</td>
<td>4 vCPUs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vCenter versions 5.5, 6.0, 6.5, and 6.7</td>
<td><strong>NOTE:</strong> Can be thin provisioned depending on the storage requirements.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMware:</td>
<td>500 GB or greater</td>
<td>16 GB</td>
<td>4 vCPUs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vCenter versions 5.5, 6.0, 6.5, and 6.7</td>
<td><strong>NOTE:</strong> Can be thin provisioned depending on the storage requirements.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMware:</td>
<td>500 GB or greater</td>
<td>16 GB</td>
<td>4 vCPUs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vCenter versions 5.5, 6.0, 6.5, and 6.7</td>
<td><strong>NOTE:</strong> Can be thin provisioned depending on the storage requirements.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMware:</td>
<td>500 GB or greater</td>
<td>16 GB</td>
<td>4 vCPUs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vCenter versions 5.5, 6.0, 6.5, and 6.7</td>
<td><strong>NOTE:</strong> Can be thin provisioned depending on the storage requirements.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMware:</td>
<td>500 GB or greater</td>
<td>16 GB</td>
<td>4 vCPUs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vCenter versions 5.5, 6.0, 6.5, and 6.7</td>
<td><strong>NOTE:</strong> Can be thin provisioned depending on the storage requirements.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMware:</td>
<td>500 GB or greater</td>
<td>16 GB</td>
<td>4 vCPUs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vCenter versions 5.5, 6.0, 6.5, and 6.7</td>
<td><strong>NOTE:</strong> Can be thin provisioned depending on the storage requirements.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMware:</td>
<td>500 GB or greater</td>
<td>16 GB</td>
<td>4 vCPUs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vCenter versions 5.5, 6.0, 6.5, and 6.7</td>
<td><strong>NOTE:</strong> Can be thin provisioned depending on the storage requirements.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introducing Turbonomic

Supported Technology | Storage Requirements | Memory | CPUs
--- | --- | --- | ---
Microsoft Azure | 500 GB or greater | 16 GB | 4 vCPUs

**NOTE:** Can be thin provisioned depending on the storage requirements.

Turbonomic Targets

You can assign instances of the following technologies as Turbonomic targets:

- **Application Servers**
  - IBM WebSphere Application Server 8.5+
  - Oracle WebLogic 12c
  - JBoss Application Server 6.3+
  - Apache Tomcat 7.x, 8.x, and 8.5.x
  - JVM 6.0+

- **Cloud Managers**
  - CloudStack 4.3 — 4.9
  - Microsoft System Center 2012 Virtual Machine Manager and System Center 2012 R2 Virtual Machine Manager
  - VMware vCloud Director 5.x — 8.2
  - OpenStack Havana — Newton
  - Amazon AWS
  - Microsoft Azure
  - IBM SoftLayer

- **Database Servers**
  - Oracle 11g R2 and 12c
  - MySQL all 5.6 and 5.7 releases

- **Fabric Managers**
  - Cisco UCS 3.1+
  - Cisco UCS Central
Introducing Turbonomic

- HPE OneView 3.00.04+

- Guest OS Processes
  - AppDynamics 4.1+
  - Docker API 1.20+

- Hyperconverged
  - Nutanix Community Edition
  - Hyperflex 2.5, 2.6

- Hypervisors
  - Citrix XenServer 5.6.x and 6.x
  - IBM PowerVM 8.3+
  - Microsoft Hyper-V 2008 R2, Hyper-V 2012, and Hyper-V 2012 R2
  - RHEV-M (RedHat Enterprise Virtualization Manager) versions 3.x
  - VMware vCenter 5.1, 5.5, 6.0, 6.5, and 6.7

- Load Balancers
  - Citrix NetScaler NS10.5

- Microsoft Applications
  - Microsoft Exchange 2012

- Network Flow Collectors
  - NetFlow/sFlow: NFDUMP — Turbonomic provides an OVA download with NFDUMP preconfigured for NetFlow and sFlow collection
  - Arista Command eAPI
  - Cisco APIC
  - Cisco Tetration 2.2.1.31

- Orchestrator Targets
  - UCS Director 6.0 — 6.5

- PaaS Targets
  - CloudFoundry Pivotal / Stackato
  - OpenShift 3.3+
  - Mesos 1.0+

- Storage Managers
  - NetApp Cmode/7mode using ONTAP 8.0+ (excluding AFF and SolidFire)
  - EMC VMAX using SMI-S 8.1+
Introducing Turbonomic

- EMC VNX (Celera) using VNX Control Station
- EMC VNX (Clarrion) using SMI-S 4.6.x
- EMC VPLEX Local Architecture with 1:1 mapping of virtual volumes and LUNs
- EMC XtremIO XMS 4.0+
- Pure Storage F-series and M-series arrays
- HP 3PAR InForm OS 3.2.2+, 3PAR SMI-S, 3PAR WSAPI
- Dell Compellent Enterprise Manager 2014-2016R3 using Dell Compellent SMI-S
- HDS (Embedded) with VSP, HUS VM, G600, G800, G1000
- HDS (Shared) with HUS110, HUS 130, HUS 150
- HDS Tuning Manager 9.x

- Turbonomic Targets (Classic UI Only)

To configure an aggregated deployment of Turbonomic, you can assign Turbonomic servers as targets. The versions of target instances must match the version of the aggregating instance.

The following sections describe these targets. For information about assigning targets to Turbonomic, see the Target Configuration Guide.

Hypervisors

Turbonomic can use a range of VM managers as targets. For general discussion, this document refers to the various supported VM managers as hypervisors.

Turbonomic supports the following hypervisor targets:
- Citrix XenServer
- Microsoft Hyper-V
- Red Hat RHEV-M
- VMware vCenter

Turbonomic uses hypervisor targets to access information about the managed VMs, hosts, and datastores, and also to execute commands such as provisioning, resizing, or reconfiguring entities in the environment. Through the hypervisor, Turbonomic can perform system monitoring, report on wasted storage, recommend actions, execute moves for VMs and VM storage, and execute VM reconfiguration (change CPU count, memory, etc.).

The entities Turbonomic discovers through hypervisor targets include:
- VMs
- Physical machines that host VMs
- Datastores that support the VMs
- Datacenters
Public Cloud Targets

In the public cloud, a service provider delivers resources such as compute, databases, and storage as a service. You typically pay for these services as you consume them, but you can also arrange different payment schedules. For example, you can use Reserved Instances (RIs) to arrive at the most cost-effective solution for your needs.

Turbonomic supports the following public cloud targets:

- Amazon Web Services
- Microsoft Azure

Turbonomic discovers the services that are in use within your public accounts. It also discovers:

- Utilization and costs per account, service, and location.
  
  With this information, Turbonomic can recommend or execute actions to maintain optimal sizing for workloads, delete unattached storage or move to the most appropriate storage tier, and other actions to assure performance while using resources efficiently.

- Pricing, including on-demand and reserved pricing.
  
  Based on the available pricing options, Turbonomic recommends when to purchase more RI capacity, and shows how efficiently you are using your current RI capacity.

- Billing families and other groupings of workloads that you configure to manage your environment.
  
  When calculating actions, Turbonomic respects billing families. Or when calculating resizes, Turbonomic recognizes groups of workloads that should all have the same capacity.

**NOTE:**

In Azure environments, when you first configure an Azure target, under some circumstances the target has No Quotas Available, and so Turbonomic cannot discover the available templates. This can happen when you initially set up the Azure account and you have not enabled any providers. If this occurs, you can install a single VM in your cloud subscription to make quotas available. Or you can navigate to the Azure Subscriptions Blade and select the subscription you want. Then for the resource providers, register the Microsoft.Compute option. For more information, see the following Microsoft article: Resolve errors for resource provider registration.

The entities Turbonomic can discover through public cloud targets include:

- Load Balancers
- Applications
- Databases and Database Servers
- Azure VMs and AWS EC2 instances
- Attached storage (EBS and Azure volumes)
- Locations:
  - Zones (displayed in the Supply Chain as Host entities)
  - Regions (displayed in the Supply Chain as Data Center entities)
Cloud Managers

Cloud Managers provide a layer of control to deliver virtual infrastructures that can be deployed automatically, or in a self-service offering to customers. They define and manage virtual datacenters (VDCs) — provider VDCs to manage the physical and virtual resources that support the cloud offering, and consumer VDCs that present limited resources to customers.

Turbonomic supports the following cloud manager targets:

- Apache CloudStack
- Microsoft Virtual Machine Manager (VMM)
- VMware vCloud Director
- OpenStack Cloud Operating System

Turbonomic has visibility into the full VDC chain, from the resources provided by the underlying hosts and physical datastores, through the resources consumed by a provider VDC, to the resources consumed by VMs hosted on a consumer VDC.

You can create special Turbonomic user accounts for consumer VDC customers. Such an account has a limited scope, and the user cannot see any of the resources outside of that scope. In this way, you can offer Turbonomic to cloud customers without exposing any proprietary infrastructure data to them. For more information, see Managing User Accounts (page 292).

The entities Turbonomic discovers through cloud manager targets include:

- **Consumer VDCs**: Virtual resources that are available to customers.
- **Provider VDCs**: Physical resources that provide the infrastructure to support Consumer VDCs.

**NOTE:**
Different targets use different names to refer to Virtual Datacenters. In the Turbonomic supply chain, these entities are all represented by Consumer and Provider VDCs, as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Turbonomic</th>
<th>vCloud Director</th>
<th>vCenter Server</th>
<th>VMM</th>
<th>CloudStack</th>
<th>OpenStack</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consumer VDC</strong></td>
<td>Organization VDC</td>
<td>Resource Pool (Child)</td>
<td>Tenant or TenantQuota</td>
<td>Accounts</td>
<td>Tenant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Provider VDC</strong></td>
<td>Provider VDC</td>
<td>Resource Pool (Root)</td>
<td>Cloud</td>
<td>Pod</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Application Servers

An application server operates in the middle tier of a multi-tier application environment. It provides reliability and scalability, and it ensures high performance in the middle tier. Many application servers support some form of clustering,
where one application server is a master, or Domain Manager, to multiple slave application servers. This can enable load balancing, and failover availability.

Turbonomic supports the following application server targets:

- IBM WebSphere Application Server
- Oracle WebLogic
- JBoss
- Apache Tomcat

The target can be a specific application server, or it can be a Domain Manager that manages a cluster of application servers. Turbonomic manages the resources used by application servers, including heap, threads, transactions, and response time in the server process, and VMem and VCPU in the VM that hosts the application server.

### Database Servers

A database server hosts processing for the database component of a client/server or multi-tier application. Turbonomic attaches as a client to the database server’s listener.

Turbonomic supports the following database server targets:

- Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2, 2012, and 2014
- Oracle 11g R2 and 12c

### Load Balancers

A load balancer is deployed in front of multiple application servers, and distributes client requests in a way that achieves the best utilization of application resources. Client requests come in to virtual applications (in NetScaler, virtual servers), and the load balancer passes the requests to the bound underlying applications according to its criteria.

Turbonomic supports the following load balancer targets:

- Citrix NetScaler

Turbonomic discovers the virtual applications that are configured for a load balancer. It can also discover applications running in your environment and automatically bind them to the correct virtual application. Turbonomic can then monitor the health of those bound applications and decide whether to provision or decommission application instances. As it provisions new instances, it automatically binds them to the correct virtual application.

The entities Turbonomic discovers through load balancer targets include:

- Virtual Applications
- Applications
Introducing Turbonomic

Storage Managers

Storage managers provide management and distribution of data storage across disk arrays. Storage managers can support thin provisioning, deduplication, and HA architectures. Turbonomic monitors resource utilization across the storage system to optimize placement and provisioning of volumes and disk arrays, as well as management of storage controller resources.

Turbonomic supports the following storage manager targets:

- NetApp Storage Systems running Data ONTAP version 8 or later
  
  The actions Turbonomic can recommend and perform are different for systems running in 7-Mode or Cluster-Mode.

- EMC VNX Series Storage Systems — for version details, see the [EMC VNX Support](#) KB article.

The entities Turbonomic discovers through storage manager targets include:

- Storage Controllers (NetApp controllers/filers, VNX processors)
- Disk Arrays (aggregates, clustered aggregates, storage pools, RAID groups)
- Datastores (volumes or LUNs)

Fabric Managers

Fabric managers provide a point of control for fabrics that unify compute, network, storage, and virtual resources within a single system.

Turbonomic supports the following fabric manager targets:

- Cisco UCS Fabric Manager

The entities Turbonomic discovers through fabric managers targets include:

- UCS Domains
- Chassis
- Fabric Interconnects
- IO Modules

Turbonomic Servers as Targets

In large virtual environments, you can use more than one Turbonomic instance to manage your workload. To manage the full environment through a single client user interface, you add these Turbonomic instances as targets to a master instance of Turbonomic. This creates an aggregated installation of Turbonomic. For more information, see the Target Configuration Guide.
NOTE:
To set up and use an Aggregated Turbonomic deployment, you must be running the Classic User Interface. To display the classic user interface, click **SWITCH TO CLASSIC UI** at the bottom left of the Turbonomic user interface.

Turbonomic Actions

Turbonomic does more than track problems in your environment. Before problems occur, Turbonomic identifies actions you can take to avoid the problems. You can perform these actions manually, direct Turbonomic to perform the actions on command, or direct Turbonomic to perform actions automatically as they arise. You can set different action modes (whether to automate or not) globally or for specific groups or clusters within your environment (see [Action Modes](page 238)).

Turbonomic performs the following general types of actions:

- **Placement** — Place a consumer on a specific provider (place a VM on a Host)
- **Configuration** — Correct a misconfiguration
- **Scaling** — Resize allocation of resources, based on profitability:
  - Resize up, shown as a required investment
  - Resize down, shown as savings
- **Start** — Start a new instance to add capacity to the environment, shown as a required investment
- **Stop** — Suspend an instance to increase efficient use of resources, shown as savings
- **Buy RI** — For workloads that are good RI candidates, purchase RI capacity to move your environment toward the RI Coverage that you desire.

Placement

Placement actions determine the best provider for a consumer. These include initial placement for a new entity, and move actions that change a consumer to use a different provider. For example, moving a VM assigns the VM to be hosted on a different PM. Moving a VM’s storage means the VM will use a different datastore. Turbonomic can move the following:

- VMs
- Containers
- Container Pods (for Kubernetes)
- DPods and VPods
- Storage
Introducing Turbonomic

**Effective CPU Capacity**

CPU processor speed is not necessarily an effective indicator of CPU capacity. For example, processor architecture can make a slower CPU have a greater effective capacity. Newer models of machines can often have fewer cores or less clock speed, but still have a higher effective capacity.

When placing VMs on hosts in the on-prem environment, Turbonomic discovers the effective CPU capacity of your hosts. This increases the accuracy of placement calculations so that newer, more efficient hosts will show a greater effective capacity than less efficient hosts that might have larger or faster processors.

To discover the effective capacity, Turbonomic uses the CINT2006 benchmark data from spec.org. This benchmark data maps to effective capacity settings that Turbonomic uses to make placement calculations.

You can see a catalog of these benchmark data and choose from listed processors when you edit Host templates. For more information, see BROKEN LINK!!! Selecting CPUs from the Catalog.

**Shared-Nothing Migration Actions**

If you have enabled storage moves and VM moves, Turbonomic can perform shared-nothing migrations, which move the VM and the stored VM files simultaneously. For example, assume a VM on a host also uses local storage on that host. In that case, Turbonomic can move that VM and move its data to a different host in a single action.

Shared-nothing migrations are available for any environments that support automation of both VM moves and storage moves. In addition, you must have the action modes for VM and storage moves set to Manual or Automated. If you meet these criteria, then all VM moves will take advantage of this feature.

If you want to limit the effect of shared-nothing migration in a VMware environment, you can use the Lock VMs to Datastores setting in the Policies view. This will ensure that specific VMs stay within a specified storage cluster.

Currently, the following targets support Shared-Nothing Migrations:

- vSphere, versions 5.1 or greater
- VMM for Hyper-V 2012 or later

**Cross-vCenter vMotion**

VMware vSphere 6.0 introduces functionality that enables migration of virtual machines between different vCenter Server instances. Turbonomic supports this capability — it considers cross-vCenter locations when calculating placement, and can recommend or execute moves to different vCenter servers.

**Moves on the Public Cloud**

On the public cloud you do not place workloads on physical hosts. In the Turbonomic Supply Chain, the Host nodes represent availability zones. Turbonomic can recommend moving a workload to a different zone, if such a move can reduce your cloud cost. These moves recognize constraints such as template and RI availability on the given zones.
In AWS environments, a VM can use Elastic Block Stores (EBS) or Instance Storage. If the VM’s root storage is EBS, then Turbonomic will recommend a VM move. However, because Instance Storage is ephemeral and a move would lose the stored data, Turbonomic does not recommend moving a VM that has Instance Storage as its root storage.

In AWS environments, if a VM is running within a billing family, then Turbonomic only recommends moving that VM to other regions within that billing family.

In AWS environments that use RIs, Turbonomic recognizes Availability Zones that you have specified for your RI purchases. For move and resize actions, Turbonomic gives precedence to these RIs in the given zone. All else being equal for a given zone, if you have Zone RIs with reserved capacity and RIs that do not reserve capacity, Turbonomic will use the Zone RI first.

Configuration

These are configure, reconfigure, and resize actions. Configure actions can add necessary network access, or reconfigure storage. Resize actions allocate more or less resource capacity on an entity, which can include adding or subtracting VCPUs or VMem on a VM, adding or subtracting capacity on a datastore, and adding or subtracting volumes in a disk array. Turbonomic can reconfigure the following:

• Application Servers (only with Resize scaling policy)
• VMs
• Containers
• Storage
• Disk Arrays
• Virtual Datacenters

Scaling

Scaling actions update capacity in your environment. For vertical scaling, Turbonomic increases or decreases the capacity of resources on existing entities. For horizontal scaling it provisions new providers. For example, provisioning a PM adds more compute capacity that is available to host VMs. Provisioning a VM adds capacity to run applications. Turbonomic can provision the following:

• Application Servers (only with Provision scaling policy)
• Containers
• VMs
• PMs
• Storage
• Storage Controllers (only for planning scenarios)
• Disk Arrays

Under certain circumstances, Turbonomic can also recommend that you provision a virtual datacenter.

Storage Resize Actions

Any storage resize action impacts both the storage entities and the entities managed by the given hypervisor. However, not all hypervisors recognize when the storage capacity has changed. After executing a storage resize, Turbonomic indicates that the resize action has succeeded. However, the hypervisor might not show the corresponding change in storage capacity. If this occurs, then you must perform a manual refresh of the hypervisor so it can discover the storage changes.

To avoid this situation, you can set the action mode to Manual or Recommend for storage resize actions. In that way, you can perform the resizes yourself, and then manually refresh your hypervisors.

Scaling on the Public Cloud

On the cloud, scaling actions change the VM to a different instance type. These can include:

• Changing a VM to an instance type with different capacity
• Changing on-demand to RI

For these actions, the action list shows the current cost for the source workload, and also the projected cost given the change. To show the current cost, Turbonomic uses the actual costs for that workload. However, to show the projected cost it uses an estimate based on average utilization for the VM, for the costs of the given template.

Note that scaling to an RI can result in running the VM on a larger instance when the cost is lower. This might occur even though the VM does not need that capacity and there are other smaller templates available.

In Azure environments, there are circumstances where a VM resize can be especially disruptive. In a given region, the infrastructure can be made up of different clusters that have different sets of underlying hardware. Further, some templates that are available in the given region are only available on different clusters. If Turbonomic recommends resizing from a template on one cluster, to a template on another cluster, then the resize action can take longer to complete than usual.

In both Azure and AWS environments, Turbonomic conforms to specific template requirements as it generates resize actions. For more information, see:

• Azure Template Requirements (page 67)
• AWS Template Requirements (page 68)

Decommission

Decommissioning actions either suspend entities (set resources aside without removing them from the environment) or terminate entities (remove them from the environment). Suspended capacity is still available to be brought back
online, but is currently not available for use. Suspended resources are candidates for termination. Turbonomic can decommission the following:

- Application Servers (only with Provision scaling policy)
- VMs (public cloud, only)
- PMs
- Storage
- Disk Arrays

Turbonomic can also recommend that you decommission a virtual datacenter.

**Wasted Storage in Azure Environments**

In Azure environments, if you have unmanaged storage that Turbonomic identifies as unattached volumes, then you can see action recommendations to remove this unused storage. The user interface then shows the estimated savings that will result after you remove this storage and no longer pay for it.

With unmanaged storage, Azure does not provide specific values for the cost per volume, or cost for the amount of storage that is in use for a given volume. For that reason, the savings that Turbonomic shows are estimates based on the overall cost for that storage. For example, if the estimated savings appear unusually high, then you should identify the storage the actions will remove, and review your billing to calculate the costs with more precision.

**Buy RI**

Turbonomic can recommend that you purchase RI capacity to reduce costs for your current workload. The analysis looks at workload history for template families to identify RI candidates. This considers the count of workloads in a family, plus their hours of active-state condition, plus RI costs to arrive at the RI capacity you should purchase. Note that different types of RIs have different costs, so the choice between using on-demand or RI pricing can vary depending on the RI Pricing configuration in your Budgets and Costs settings. For more information, see [RI Purchase Profile](#page-209).

You should note that Turbonomic uses a weighted history of workload activity and that suspended VMs are also considered. The longer ago that the workload was suspended, the less weight it has in the RI Buy calculation.

The methods used to suspend the workloads and which affect the calculation of RI purchases are as follows:

- For the on-prem environment, if you use vCenter or another hypervisor to suspend VMs, then Turbonomic recognizes those suspended VMs and takes them into account as it calculates RI purchases. Note that Turbonomic does not recommend or automate SUSPEND VM actions for VMs in the on-prem environment.

- For the public cloud, if you use Turbonomic, vCenter, or another hypervisor to suspend workloads, then Turbonomic takes those suspended workloads into account as it calculates RI purchases. Note that Turbonomic does recommend and execute SUSPEND VM actions for VMs on the public cloud.

For AWS environments that use the *Instance Size Flexible* rules, Turbonomic can recommend that you buy multiple RIs of smaller instance types to cover the resource requirements of larger instance types. For example, rather than buying one t2.small RI, Turbonomic can recommend that you buy four t2.nano RIs to offer an equivalent discount.

For AWS environments that consolidate billing into Billing Families, Turbonomic recommends purchases for RIs that are within the given billing family. For more information, see [AWS Billing Family Recognition](#page-203).
NOTE:
As Turbonomic calculates actions to purchase RI capacity, it assumes that any other pending actions for the workload will also be executed. For example, assume a workload running on an r4.xlarge template. If Turbonomic recommends changing that instance type to an m5.medium, it can recommend that you purchase an m5 RI to cover the workload and reduce costs. This purchase could be on a region that currently doesn't have any m5 workloads — The purchase recommendation assumes you will move the workload to that other region.

Action Categories
Turbonomic groups entries in the Actions List by different categories. These categories do not strictly define the severity of an issue, but they indicate the nature of the issue.

Performance
Ultimately, the reason to manage workloads in your environment is to assure performance and meet QoS goals. When Turbonomic detects conditions that directly put QoS at risk, it recommends associated actions in the Performance category. You can consider these critical conditions, and you should execute the recommended actions as soon as possible.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actions</th>
<th>Risks/Opportunities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Bind a new application (to a virtual application)</td>
<td>• &lt;Resource&gt; Congestion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Provision a new VM, Host, Datastore</td>
<td>High utilization of application managed by a load balancer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Increase number of VCPUs</td>
<td>High utilization of resources on workload, Host, or datastore.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Decrease number of VCPUs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Scale the resource capacity on an entity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prevention
Turbonomic constantly monitors conditions, and works to keep your environment running in a desired state. As it finds issues that risk moving the environment out of this state, it recommends associated actions in the Prevention category. You should attend to these issues, and perform the associated actions. If you do not, the environment may drift away from the desired state, and the QoS for some services may be put at risk.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actions</th>
<th>Risks/Opportunities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Move VM</td>
<td>• &lt;Resource&gt; Congestion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Storage Move</td>
<td>High resource utilization on the named VM, host, or data store. For example, CPU congestion or Memory</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introducing Turbonomic

### Actions
- Start VM or Host

### Risks/Opportunities
- Congestion can occur on a VM or physical machine, or an IOPS bottleneck can occur on a datastore.
- Workload Balancing
  Excess workload on a given physical machine that can be addressed by moving a VM to another host.

### Efficiency
Efficient utilization of resources is an important part of running in the desired state. Running efficiently maximizes your investment in hardware and reduces cost. When Turbonomic discovers underutilized resources, it recommends actions to consolidate your operations. For example, it can recommend that you move certain VMs onto a different host. This can free a physical machine to be shut down.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actions</th>
<th>Risks/Opportunities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Overprovisioning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Excess resource capacity in a Host or datastore.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Compliance
A virtual environment can include policies that limit workload placement or availability of resources. It’s possible that the environment configuration violates these defined policies. It’s also possible that an entity is mis-configured in some way. For example, a VM might be configured to access a network that is not available in its current cluster. In such cases, Turbonomic identifies the violation and recommends actions that bring the entity back into compliance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actions</th>
<th>Risks/Opportunities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Placement Violation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The placement of a VM is in violation of a Turbonomic policy or an imported Placement Policy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introducing Turbonomic

Actions | Risks/Opportunities
---|---
| • Misconfiguration
The configuration violates discovered requirements. For example, a VM is configured to access a network that is not available from the current cluster.

Cloud VMs with Failed Sizing
For workload on the public cloud, if Turbonomic tries to execute a move or a resize action but the action fails, then Turbonomic places the affected VM in a special group named *Cloud VMs with Failed Sizing*. Under normal circumstances this group will be empty. But in case some actions have failed, you can review the contents of this group to inspect the individual VMs. As soon as Turbonomic successfully executes a move or resize on a VM in this group, it then removes the VM from the group.

**NOTE:**
When Turbonomic places a VM in this group, it restarts the VM to ensure that it is running correctly with its original configuration.

By default Turbonomic does not include any action policies for this group. Whatever action mode is set to the given VMs remains in effect while the VMs are in this group. You can create a policy and scope the policy to this group. For example, assume you see typical failures for move actions that Turbonomic tries to execute during working hours. In that case, you can create a scheduling window that enables move and resize actions during off hours. That can help to automatically execute the actions and remove the VMs from this group.

Note that the VMs in this group could already be in a scope that is affected by another actions policy. Remember that with competing policies, the most conservative policy wins. When working with the Cloud VMs with Failed Sizing group, this can have unintended consequences. Assume you have VMs with automated resize and move actions, and you create a policy the sets move and resize to Manual for this group. Assume a failed resize action places a VM into this group. In that case the more conservative action mode takes effect, and the VM will use Manual for both resize and move. Because of a failed resize action, the VM neither automates subsequent actions to resize it nor actions to move it.

Resource Descriptions
To perform intelligent workload balancing, Turbonomic collects raw data from its target servers – hypervisors, cloud management stacks, public cloud accounts, etc. Turbonomic polls its targets at 10-minute intervals to collect the latest data samples. It then uses these 10-minute data points for analysis and to display data in the GUI.

The way Turbonomic collects host memory data from vCenter Server illustrates how this works. vCenter Server collects peak metrics from its managed VMs at 20-second intervals. Every ten minutes Turbonomic polls vCenter Server to
Introducing Turbonomic

collect its last round of data samples (30 samples in 10 minutes). To track a VM’s utilization of host memory, Turbonomic requests *memory.active* data samples from vCenter. From that polling, Turbonomic can track:

- Peak Memory Utilization - Turbonomic uses the greatest value in each polling sample. This gives the highest percentage of active memory utilization for the selected VM (or group of VMs), calculated over the selected time period. For a maximum value, Turbonomic uses the highest observed active memory value in the data sample.
- Average Memory Utilization - Turbonomic averages all the values in each polling sample.

**NOTE:**
The above example describes utilization calculations for on-prem entities. For workloads on the public cloud, Turbonomic includes the *Aggressiveness* and *Max Observation Period* settings to calculate a percentile of utilization. By using a percentile, Turbonomic can recommend more relevant actions to take advantage of elasticity on the public cloud. For more information, see "Aggressiveness" or "Max Observation Period" in *Analysis Policies: VMs* (page 273) or *Max Observation Period* (page 274).

The following table lists the metrics Turbonomic collects, and includes details about how they are collected or measured. When the Turbonomic user interface plots charts of clusters or groups of devices, these charts show the average of the percentage of allocated resources that are used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resource:</th>
<th>Description:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1-2-4-CPU Rdy</td>
<td>Wait time in the ready queue on the host, measured in ms. Turbonomic monitors 1-CPU, 2-CPU, 4-CPU, up to 32-CPU ready queues on hosts. Charts show 1 - 4 CPU values. The charts show the percentage allocated ready queue capacity that is in use on the host. For host charts, this is a measure of the total ready queue wait time for all the VMs running on that host.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Balloon            | Ballooning capacity on the PM, measured in KBytes. This capacity is the greater of:  
|                    | • 65% of the VMem configured for all powered-on VMs that the PM hosts  
|                    | • The physical memory capacity of the PM  
<p>|                    | Charts show the percentage of the PM’s ballooning capacity that is in use.                                                                                                                                     |
| Buffer             | For network environments that support buffered switch ports (Arista networks), this resource measures utilization of a port buffer. For example, if a host connects to the network through port 1 on a switch, and that port has enough traffic to cause packet buffering, this resource will show utilization. |
| Connection         | The connections in use, as a percentage of the maximum connections allowed on the database. Database configuration determines the capacity for this resource.                                                        |
| Cooling            | Allocated cooling indicates the highest acceptable running temperature for a physical device, such as a chassis in a compute fabric.                                                                         |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resource:</th>
<th>Description:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| CPU              | Host CPU capacity, measured in MHz. This shows what percentage of CPU cycles are devoted to processing instructions.  
• Host charts show the percentage of the host’s CPU capacity that is in use.  
• VM charts show the percentage of the host’s CPU capacity that is consumed by the given VM. |
| DBMem            | The memory in use by the database, as a percentage of the allocated capacity. Database configuration determines the capacity for this resource. Note that for databases, Turbonomic uses this resource to drive actions, instead of the VMem on the hosting VM. This means that actions are driven by the actual memory consumption on the database. |
| Flow0 — InProvider Flow | For measuring network flow, the flow that is within a single provider — For example, the network flow between VMs that are hosted by the same physical machine. This measures network flow between consumers that are on the same set of closely connected providers. Charts show the percentage of capacity that is utilized. Note that Turbonomic assumes an unlimited supply of InProvider Flow because this flow does not go across the physical network. |
| Flow1 — InDPOD Flow | For measuring network flow, the flow that is local to the given DPOD. This measures network flow between consumers that are on the same set of closely connected providers. Charts show the percentage of capacity that is utilized. |
| Flow2 — CrossDPOD Flow | For measuring network flow, the flow that is between different DPODs. This measures network flow between consumers that are on different sets of closely connected providers. Charts show the percentage of capacity that is utilized. |
| Heap             | The heap capacity allocated for an application. Charts show the percentage of capacity that is used by an application.                                                                                                                                               |
| HotStorage       | For Nutanix platforms, the storage capacity on the server-attached flash.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| IO               | Data rate through the host’s IO adapter, measured in KBytes/sec.  
• Datacenter charts show the average percentage of the host IO capacity that is in use, for all the hosts in the datacenter.  
• Host charts show the percentage of the host’s total IO capacity that is in use. |
<p>| IOPS             | Storage access operations per second. Charts show the percentage of allocated IOPS capacity that is used on a datastore.                                                                                                                                                     |
| Latency          | Allocated capacity for latency on a datastore. This measures the latency experienced by all VMs and hosts that access the datastore. Charts show the percentage of allocated latency that is in use on the datastore.                                                                 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resource</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Mem      | Host memory, measured in Kbytes.  
• Host charts show the percentage of the host’s memory that is in use.  
• VM charts show the percentage of the host’s memory that is consumed by the given VM. |
| NET      | Data rate through the host’s Network adapter, measured in Kbytes/sec.  
• Datacenter charts show the average percentage of the host NET capacity that is used for all the hosts in the datacenter.  
• Host charts show the percentage of the host’s total NET capacity that is in use. |
| nfu      | Normalized Factor Unit.  
For RIs in AWS environments, the nfu is a measure of RI capacity that you can use to compare or combine the capacity for different template families. For example, the normalized factors for some template families include:  
• nano: 0.25  
• micro: 0.5  
• small: 1  
• medium: 2  
• large: 4  
Turbonomic measures RI utilization and coverage in terms of these normalized factors. |
| Power    | A measure of the power that is consumed by a physical device. |
| Swap     | The rate of memory swapping to disk, in bytes per second. The default capacity is 5,000,000 Byte/sec. |
| Threads  | Allocated thread capacity. Charts show the percentage of thread capacity that is consumed by an application server. |
| TransactionLog | The disk space devoted to transaction logging for a database. |
| Transactions | Transactions per second in an application. Charts show the percentage of an application’s allocated transaction capacity that is in use. |
| UI       | A measure of the impact on Quality of Service (QoS) that a consumer will experience. The higher the UI on a provider, the more risk to QoS for any consumer of that provider’s services. |
Introducing Turbonomic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resource</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>For all the resources that impact performance or risk, charts show the UI for the most utilized resource of a given entity. For example, if a host has a UI of 6 for MEM and 12 for CPU, the chart will show the higher value.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCPU</td>
<td>The CPU capacity allocated to a VM guest OS, measured in MHz. Charts show the percentage of a VM’s VCPU cycles that are devoted to processing instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMem</td>
<td>The memory allocated to a VM guest OS, measured in Kbytes. Charts show the percentage of a VM’s allocated VMem that is in use. Note that percentages of allocated VMem are measured against whichever is the less of: The VMem limit (if set) or the allocated VMem capacity. This is also true in reports and recommended actions. For example, assume a VM with allocated VMem of 8 GB, but a limit of 4 GB. In this case, the percentage in a chart shows the percentage utilized of 4GB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VStorage</td>
<td>Virtual storage allocated to a VM, measured in Kbytes. Charts show the percentage of a VM’s allocated VStorage that is in use.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Logging In to Turbonomic

To get started with the platform, open a web browser to your Turbonomic installation. The Turbonomic platform serves the user interface to your browser, where you can log in and get started managing your environment. In this way, you can access the unique capabilities of Turbonomic from any internet connection.

Before you can log in, an instance of Turbonomic must be installed in your environment. To get the IP address of your Turbonomic installation, contact your system administrator.

To log in to Turbonomic:

1. Navigate your Web browser to the Turbonomic installation.
   
   For the URL, provide the IP address or machine name for the installation. This URL opens the Turbonomic Login page. You should bookmark this URL for future use.

2. Provide the user name and password for your account.
   
   Your system administrator creates user accounts. Contact your system administrator for login information.

After you log in, the browser opens to the Home Page (page 35). This page is your starting point for sessions with the Turbonomic platform. From the Home Page you can see the following overviews of your environment:

- HYBRID – See all the actions that are pending for the entire environment, both on-prem and in the cloud.
- ON-PREM – See details for the on-prem environment. Notice that the Supply Chain excludes cloud entities and only shows the entities that are on-prem.
- CLOUD – See details for the cloud environment, including pending actions, a listing of your cloud accounts by cost, the locations of cloud datacenters that you are using, estimated costs, and other cost-related information.

To display this information, Turbonomic communicates with target services such as hypervisors, storage controllers, and public cloud accounts. Note that your Turbonomic administrator sets up the target configuration. For information about supported targets and how to configure them, see the Target Configuration Guide.
The Home Page

When you launch Turbonomic, the Home Page is the first view you see. From the Home Page you can:

• Use the Supply Chain Navigator to inspect lists of entities
  Click an entity tier in the Supply Chain to see a list of those entities. For example, click Virtual Machine to see a list of all the VMs in your environment.

• Choose a View to see overviews of your environment:
  ◦ HYBRID – See all the actions that are pending for the entire environment, both on-prem and in the cloud.
  ◦ ON-PREM – See details for the on-prem environment. Notice that the Supply Chain excludes cloud entities and only shows the entities that are on-prem.
  ◦ CLOUD – See details for the cloud environment, including pending actions, a listing of your cloud accounts by cost, the locations of cloud datacenters that you are using, estimated costs, and other cost-related information.
• Navigate to other Turbonomic pages, including:
  ◦ Search – Set the session scope to drill down to details about your environment
  ◦ Plan – Run what-if scenarios or plan migrations to the cloud
  ◦ Place – Use Turbonomic to calculate the best placement for workloads, and execute the placement at the time you specify
  ◦ Dashboard – Set up custom views with charts that focus on specifics in your environment
  ◦ Reports – Generate reports and manage subscriptions to those reports
  ◦ Settings – Configure Turbonomic to set up business rules and policies, configure targets, define groups, and perform other administrative tasks

Getting Home

Wherever you are in your Turbonomic session, you can always click the Home icon to return to the Home Page.

Hybrid View

When you set your session to the Global Scope (click HOME), you can then select the HYBRID view. This view shows all the actions that are pending for the entire environment, both on-prem and in the cloud.

Because this view shows both the on-prem and cloud aspects of your environment, it displays only those charts with data common to both. You can see information about actions, including:

• Lists of pending actions
• Overviews of pending actions
  If you have pending actions in the public cloud, the overview includes the estimated monthly savings or cost associated with those actions. For on-prem actions, the overview can include estimated one-time savings or cost.
• Action history – You can see a history of all actions that have been recommended and executed, or of just the actions that have been accepted and executed.

To see complete lists of actions, click the SHOW ALL link at the bottom of the Actions chart.
ON-PREM View

When you set your session to the Global Scope (click HOME), you can then select the ON-PREM view. This view shows an overview of your on-prem environment. If you don't have any workload on the public cloud, then you should use this as your starting point for a Turbonomic session. If you have a hybrid environment (on-prem and on the public cloud), then you can refer to this view to see a detailed on-prem overview.
The Supply Chain shows all the on-prem entities in your environment. The charts show details about your environment, including:

- **Overviews of pending actions**
  When appropriate, the overview includes estimated one-time savings or costs associated with the actions.

- **Action history**
  You can see a history of all actions that have been recommended and executed, or of just the actions that have been accepted and executed.

- **Top Cluster utilization**
  See a list of the five most utilized clusters. The chart shows these clusters, along with a count of actions for each. To drill down into the cluster details, click the cluster name. To see and execute the specific actions, click the **ACTIONS** button for that cluster. To see all the clusters in your environment, click **SHOW ALL**.

- **Optimized Improvements**
  Compare current resource utilization with the utilization you would see if you choose to execute all the pending actions.

- **Headroom**
  See how many more workloads can run on your current infrastructure while maintaining performance.

- **Risk Index**
  This chart indicates the overall health of your environment over time. The Risk Index shows whether your environment is keeping in a healthy state, or whether it's on a trend toward overutilization or underutilization of resources.
CLOUD View

When you set your session to the Global Scope (click HOME), you can then select the CLOUD view. This view shows an overview of your cloud environment. If all your workload is on the public cloud, then you should use this as your starting point for a Turbonomic session. If you have a hybrid environment (on-prem and on the public cloud), then you can refer to this view to see a detailed cloud overview.

To view cloud cost information, you must have one or more public cloud targets set up in your Turbonomic installation. For information about setting up public cloud targets, see the Turbonomic Target Configuration Guide.

In addition, to view full cost information in AWS, you must have created a Cost and Usage report in your AWS account and you must store it in an S3 bucket.

For more information, see Displaying AWS Spend In Turbonomic.

In this view, the Supply Chain shows all the cloud entities in your environment. The charts show details about your cloud environment, including:

- **Overviews of pending actions**
  The overview includes the estimated monthly savings or cost associated with those actions.

- **Top Accounts utilization**
  See a list of the five most utilized public cloud accounts. The chart shows these accounts, along with an estimate of the monthly cost for each. To see all the cloud accounts in your environment, click SHOW ALL.

- **Necessary Investments and Potential Savings**
  For the current set of pending actions, these charts show the impact in dollar value. Necessary Investments are from actions to provision more workloads or to resize workloads up. Potential Savings are from actions to resize down, or to purchase RI resources and put them into active use.
• Charts that show your current Reserved Instance strategy:
  ◦ Recommended RI Purchases shows the projected inventory of pending Reserved Instance purchases.
  ◦ RI Coverage compares the capacity of your current VM workload to the capacity of workload that is covered by Reserved Instances.
  ◦ RI Inventory shows the RI workloads that Turbonomic discovers and lists them by templates.
  ◦ RI Utilization shows how well you have utilized the reservation inventory. The chart compares the capacity for all reservations versus the RI consumption by virtual machines.

• Location
  This chart displays the locations of your cloud accounts' regions or zones on a map. Hover on a data point to see the region or zone name. Click a region to set the view's scope.

• Action history
  You can see a history of actions that have been recommended and executed, or of just the actions that have been accepted and executed.

• Cost Breakdown by Cloud Account
  This chart shows costs over time for each account that you have set up as a target in Turbonomic.

• Cloud Cost Comparison
  For all of your public cloud workload, compare your current costs with the costs you would see if you execute the pending actions. This chart lists the workloads according to the types of actions that are pending for them. For example, you might see that 10 out of 100 VMs have pending Performance Assurance actions. Also, you can see the current monthly costs, the savings these actions would realize, and the resulting difference of those savings.

  **NOTE:**
  For pending RI Buy actions in real time, Turbonomic can only estimate the cost that would result if you execute them. This must be an estimate because the full data is only available after you actually purchase the RIs. These estimates reflect costs you would see after scaling workloads to the newly purchased RI capacity. For scaling to already-purchased RIs, the chart reflects the actual costs.

• Cost Breakdown by Cloud Service
  This chart shows costs over time for each cloud service that you use in your cloud accounts. For example, you can see the cost for AWS CloudWatch, compared to the cost for AWS S3 storage.

• Cost Breakdown by Component
  This chart shows costs over time for each component of your cloud utilization. You can see costs for:
  ◦ Compute
  ◦ IP (static IPs for workloads)
  ◦ License (OS license)
  ◦ Storage
  ◦ Capacity

• Cost Breakdown by Cloud Service Provider
Tracking Cloud Cost

Turbonomic tracks your cloud spend based on the cost information it discovers from targets (for example, accounts, billing reports, and on-demand or RI costs), discounts (for example, price adjustments), and rate cards. For information, see Price Adjustments (page 215) and Azure Rate Cards (page 212).

- Cost for Services
  Turbonomic uses the billing reports from your cloud service providers, as they are associated with your cloud targets. Turbonomic parses these reports to get cost breakdowns by service, service provider, and cloud account. You can see cost data in charts such as:
  ◦ Cloud Estimated Cost
  ◦ Cost Breakdown by Cloud Accounts, Component, or Service Provider
  ◦ Cloud Cost Comparison
  ◦ Expenses

- Workload Expenses
  Workloads are the VMs running in your environment, or other hosted processes such as database servers, application servers, or containers. Turbonomic tracks the following expenses for your workloads:
  ◦ Compute
    For compute expenses Turbonomic uses hourly expense per template as specified in the associated public cloud account.
  ◦ Storage
    Turbonomic discovers the storage tier that supports a given workload, and uses the tier pricing to calculate storage cost.
  ◦ License
    For AWS environments, Turbonomic can calculate OS costs. To calculate the OS cost for a VM, Turbonomic subtracts the template cost from the published workload cost. It assumes the difference is the license cost for that workload. If the OS is open source, then there will be no difference, and license cost is zero.
  ◦ IP
    For some workloads, you might use IP services that incur a cost. For example, your cloud provider might charge to grant a static IP to a VM. On AWS environments Turbonomic can include that cost in its calculation and analysis.

Turbonomic uses this cost information when making VM resize and placement decisions, both in real time and in plans. You can see this information in Expenses charts and in the results of Migrate to Cloud plans.
NOTE:
For AWS clouds, Turbonomic can get the information it needs to display license costs for database instances. For Azure clouds, Turbonomic does not display database license costs because Azure does not make that information available.

Costs for Dedicated Tenancy on AWS

When you create VMs on AWS, you can specify their tenancy. When you specify Dedicated Tenancy (DT), the VMs you create are Amazon EC2 instances running on hardware that is dedicated to a single customer. To understand DT in the context of Turbonomic, you should consider:

- For AWS, the Turbonomic supply chain shows an Availability Zone as a Host. The supply chain does not indicate whether certain VMs have tenancy dedicated to specific resources in the given availability zone. Also, Turbonomic does not discover or show the costs for dedicated hosting of your workloads.

- Pricing for DT workloads is different than pricing for Shared Tenancy. Turbonomic does not discover that difference, and uses Shared Tenancy cost for the DT workloads. In action descriptions, the listed savings or investments will be based on Shared Tenancy costs.

- Turbonomic discovers the true costs of RIs for DT workloads. However, because the on-demand VM costs are based on Shared Tenancy, Turbonomic can overstate the savings you would get for purchasing and using RI capacity. In most cases, recommendations to purchase RIs will be correct. However, the time to achieve ROI could take longer than action descriptions and charts indicate.

- Some instance types that are valid for Shared Tenancy are not valid for DT. To see which instance types are valid for your DT VMs, consult the AWS documentation or your AWS representative.

To address these issues, you can create groups that set a scope to your DT workloads. For example, you can use naming conventions, tagging, or other means to identify your DT workloads. Then you can create dynamic groups based on those indicators. With those groups, you can create policies and dashboards that correspond to the differences you see in your DI environment. Use this approach to address issues for:

- Available Instance Types

  To resize a workload, Turbonomic generates an action to change that workload to a different instance type. Because Turbonomic does not discover the difference between instance types that are valid for DT and for Shared Tenancy, it can recommend scaling a DT workload to an unavailable instance type. To avoid this, create a policy for the DT group, and exclude the unavailable instance types.

- Displaying Costs

  Turbonomic includes charts that show the costs for your environment. If the scope includes DT workloads, then the cost will not be completely accurate. Use scope to minimize this effect. You can create separate dashboards for your DT and Shared Tenancy workloads. When running plans you can scope the plan to DT or Shared Tenancy workloads.

Resizing Cloud Workloads

To resize a workload (for example, a VM or an RDS instance) on the cloud, Turbonomic chooses the cloud template that best matches the workload requirements. This can be to reduce cost by choosing a smaller template, or it can be to
In order to assure performance by choosing a larger template. To accomplish the resize, Turbonomic actually moves the workload to the new template. This can include moving to a new availability zone.

Note that resize decisions also take into account the discount you can realize by using RI purchases. Turbonomic can recommend to purchase more RI resources. When considering workload resize actions, Turbonomic can recommend resizing to a larger RI template because the overall cost will be less.

As it considers a resize, Turbonomic also considers the storage and network requirements. Even if the compute resources are underutilized on a workload, if the available templates cannot support the storage or network requirements then Turbonomic will not recommend the change.

**Scaling on the Public Cloud**

On the cloud, scaling actions change the VM to a different instance type. These can include:

- Changing a VM to an instance type with different capacity
- Changing on-demand to RI

For these actions, the action list shows the current cost for the source workload, and also the projected cost given the change. To show the current cost, Turbonomic uses the actual costs for that workload. However, to show the projected cost it uses an estimate based on average utilization for the VM, for the costs of the given template.

Note that scaling to an RI can result in running the VM on a larger instance when the cost is lower. This might occur even though the VM does not need that capacity and there are other smaller templates available.

In Azure environments, there are circumstances where a VM resize can be especially disruptive. In a given region, the infrastructure can be made up of different clusters that have different sets of underlying hardware. Further, some templates that are available in the given region are only available on different clusters. If Turbonomic recommends resizing from a template on one cluster, to a template on another cluster, then the resize action can take longer to complete than usual.

In both Azure and AWS environments, Turbonomic conforms to specific template requirements as it generates resize actions. For more information, see:

- [Azure Template Requirements](page 67)
- [AWS Template Requirements](page 68)

**Reserved Instances (RIs)**

Turbonomic analysis takes advantage of AWS Reserved Instances to calculate optimal workload placement and to arrive at the best possible costs for your deployments on the cloud. The Cloud View includes charts that illustrate this:

- Pending Actions
  
  If Turbonomic has found actions you can take to improve performance or to reduce cost, then you can see an overview of them in the Pending Actions chart. To see a listing of the specific actions, click **Show All** at the bottom of the chart.

- RI Utilization
This chart shows how well you have utilized the reservation inventory. The chart compares the capacity for all reservations versus the RI consumption by virtual machines. The chart measures utilization in normalization factor units (NFUs) or dollar amounts.

- **RI Coverage**
  This chart compares the capacity of your current VM workload to the capacity of workload that is covered by Reserved Instances.
  If you have a high percentage of on-demand workload, then you should be able to reduce your monthly costs by increasing RI coverage. To increase coverage, you resize workloads to instance types that have existing RI capacity. If you need more RI capacity, then Turbonomic will recommend the RI templates that you should buy.

- **RI Inventory**
  This chart lists the RI templates that are active in your inventory. For a tabular listing, click **Show All**. This lists the active instances, including:
  - Template details (template name, number used, and platform)
  - RI Type (Standard or Convertible)
  - Payment details (term and up-front payment status)
  - Location (region or availability zone)
  - Account ID
  - Effective cost (monthly payment, accounting for up-front payments)
  - Utilization (Percentage of time the RI is utilized)
  - Savings (Based on utilization, the estimated monthly savings as compared to on-demand pricing)
  - Expiration date

- **Recommended RI Purchases**
  This chart shows the projected inventory of pending Reserved Instance purchases as generated by Turbonomic. For a tabular listing, click **Show All**. This lists the RI templates that Turbonomic recommends, including:
  - Template details (template name, number used, and platform)
  - RI Type (Standard or Convertible)
  - Term (1 year, for example)
  - Payment details (All Up-front, for example)
  - Location (region or availability zone)
  - Account ID
  - Up-front cost
  - Net savings
  - Break-even period (The time at which reservation savings will exceed the purchase cost of the reservation, rounded to the month)
Turbonomic can recommend that you purchase RI capacity to reduce costs for your current workload. For information about the analysis, see Buy RI (page 26).

**NOTE:**
For pending RI Buy actions in real time, Turbonomic can only estimate the cost that would result if you execute them. This must be an estimate because the full data is only available after you actually purchase the RIs. These estimates reflect costs you would see after scaling workloads to the newly purchased RI capacity. For scaling to already-purchased RIs, the chart reflects the actual costs.
Supply Chain of Entities

To perform intelligent workload management, Turbonomic models your environment as a market of buyers and sellers linked together in a supply chain. This supply chain represents the flow of resources from the datacenter, through the physical tiers of your environment, into the virtual tier and out to the cloud. By managing relationships between these buyers and sellers, Turbonomic provides closed-loop management of resources, from the datacenter, through to the application.
Reading the Supply Chain

By looking at the Supply Chain, you can see:

• How many entities you have on each tier
  Each entry in the supply chain gives a count of entities for the given type.

• The overall health of entities in each tier
  The ring for each entry indicates the percentage of pending actions for that tier in the datacenter. Ring colors indicate how critical the actions are - Green shows the percentage of entities that have no actions pending. To get actual counts of pending actions, hover on a ring to more details.

• The flow of resources between tiers
  The arrow from one entry to another indicates the flow of resources. For example, the Virtual Machine entry has arrows to Physical Machine and to Storage. If the VMs are running in a Virtual Data Center, it will have another arrow to that as well. This means that your VMs consume resources from PMs, storage, and possible from VDCs.

Listing Entities From the Home Page

The Supply Chain shows the relationships of entities in your environment. When you're on the Home Page with a global scope, the supply chain filters its display according to the view you have chosen:

• HYBRID view – All the entities in your environment
• ON-PREM – All your on-prem entities
• CLOUD – All your entities on the public cloud

To see a list of entities, click an entity tier in the Supply Chain.
Supply Chain Entity Types

The Turbonomic user interface displays the following entity types in the supply chain:

- Load Balancer (page 49)
- Virtual Application (page 50)
- Application (page 52)
- Application Server (page 54)
- Business Application (page 57)
- Database Server (page 59)
- Container (page 62)
- ContainerPod (page 63)
- Virtual Machine (page 65)
- Virtual Datacenter (page 69)
- Host (page 74)
- Storage (page 77)
- Disk Array (page 79)
- Storage Controller (page 81)
- IO Module (page 83)
Supply Chain - Load Balancer

An Application Load Balancer provides a single point of contact for clients to application targets. It distributes client traffic to multiple targets to increase availability of the application services. For client requests to a virtual application, the load balancer forwards the requests to actual applications that perform the service.

Turbonomic shows AWS and Azure load balancers in the Supply Chain. You can set the session scope to specific load balancers to see the constituent virtual applications, and the rest of the supply chain.
### Synopsis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Budget:</th>
<th>A load balancer has unlimited budget and will never be suspended.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Provides:</td>
<td>Transactions to end users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumes:</td>
<td>Transactions from virtual applications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discovered through:</td>
<td>Turbonomic discovers load balancers that are running in AWS accounts or Azure subscriptions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Monitored Resources

Turbonomic does not monitor load balancer resources.

### Actions

Turbonomic does not recommend actions to perform on the load balancer itself, but it does recommend actions to perform on the VMs that host the underlying applications.

### Supply Chain - Virtual Application
A virtual application is the client’s point of contact to request services from an application that is managed by a load balancer. The virtual application is a proxy for multiple instances of actual applications. For client requests to a virtual application, the load balancer forwards the requests to actual applications that perform the service.

To create a virtual application, the load balancer binds actual application instances to the virtual application.

### Synopsis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Budget:</strong></th>
<th>A virtual server has unlimited budget to buy application resources. As a result, a virtual application will never be suspended.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Provides:</strong></td>
<td>Transactions to end users and other applications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consumes:</strong></td>
<td>Applications running on VMs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discovered through:</strong></td>
<td>Turbonomic discovers virtual application servers through load balancer targets.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Monitored Resources

Turbonomic monitors the following resources for a virtual application:

- **Transaction (transactions per second)**
  
  The percentage utilization of the allocated transactions per second for the given virtual application.
Actions

Turbonomic does not recommend actions to perform on the virtual application itself, but it does recommend actions to perform on the VMs that host bound applications. For example, assume a virtual application that manages three SQL databases. If a surge in requests degrades performance across all three databases, then Turbonomic can start a new VM to run another instance of the database application, and bind it to the virtual application.

Supply Chain - Application

In a virtualized environment, an application is a process running on a VM. Applications typically serve human users or other applications. They provide transactions to their users.

| Synopsis |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| Budget:           | By default applications have a priority of Mission Critical. This gives applications unlimited budget. If you override this setting to lower an application’s priority, it gains budget as a function of its activity, as measured by utilization of transactions. The more active an application is (the more transactions the application performs), the more it is selling its services to a user. |
| Provides:         | Transactions to other applications, to load balancer Virtual Application Servers, and to end users. |
| Consumes:         | VM resources, including VCPU, VMem, and VStorage. |
## Synopsis

| Discovered through: | Turbonomic uses Guest OS Process targets to discover WMI and SNMP application processes running on workloads. You can also specify targets to perform discovery through specific application targets. For information, see the Target Configuration Guide. |

## Application Discovery

To discover applications, you can set up the following targets:

- **Guest Os Processes targets to discover applications through WMI and SNMP**
  - Applications by signature
    - These currently include LSASS, ISS, XenDesktop, VMView, MSSQL, and SharePoint.
  - Guest Load
    - The resources that Turbonomic has not assigned to any specific application. By default, every VM has a Guest Load application. (For more information, see Guest Load, below.)

- **Microsoft Applications**
  - Microsoft Exchange 2012

## Guest Load

The Apps_GuestLoad item is a special entry in the Applications hierarchy. This item tracks the resources that Turbonomic has not assigned to any specific application. This can occur for the following reasons:

- **You do not have the licenses required to support Application monitoring**
  - In this case, Turbonomic lists all the consumed VM resources in the Apps_GuestLoad entry—this is the only entry under Applications.

- **Turbonomic cannot discover some applications, or some applications are not registered for discovery.**
  - In this case, Turbonomic displays entries for the applications it has discovered, and lists the VM resources that are not accounted for under Apps_GuestLoad.

- **VM resources are devoted to infrastructure, and not part of any application**
  - Turbonomic lists these resources under Apps_GuestLoad, and provides entries for the applications it has discovered.
Monitored Resources

Turbonomic can monitor the following resources for an application:

- **VMem**
  The percentage utilization of the VMem (in Kbytes) that was allocated to the hosting VM.

- **VCPU**
  The percentage utilization of the VCPU (in MHz) allocated for the hosting VM.

Actions

For Guest OS processes, Turbonomic doesn’t perform actions on applications. Instead, it performs actions on the host VMs. If utilization is high enough on an application, Turbonomic can create a new copy of the host VM. When an application is idle, it loses budget. On the public cloud, if the budget falls enough, Turbonomic will recommend to suspend or terminate the host VM.

Supply Chain - Application Server

An application server is a service that creates web applications and provides the environment to run them in. For example, IBM WebSphere is a framework that hosts Java based web applications, or Apache Tomcat is a Java Servlet container that hosts a range of Java applications on the web.

**Synopsis**

| Budget: | By default application servers have a priority of Mission Critical. This gives them unlimited budget. If you override this setting to lower an application server’s priority, it gains budget as a function of its activity, as measured by utilization of transactions. The more active an |
**Synopsis**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>application server is (the more transactions it performs), the more it is selling its services to a user.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Provides:</td>
<td>Transactions to other applications, to load balancer Virtual Application Servers, and to end users.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Consumes: | • VM resources, including VCPU, VMem, and VStorage  
• Connections from Database Servers |
| Discovered through: | Specified Application Server targets  
For information, see the Target Configuration Guide. |

**Application Server Discovery**

To discover Application Servers, you can set up the following targets:

- IBM WebSphere Application Server 8.5+
- Oracle WebLogic 12c
- JBoss Application Server 6.3+
- Apache Tomcat 7.x, 8.x, and 8.5.x
- JVM 6.0+

**Monitored Resources**

Turbonomic monitors the following resources for an application server:

- VMem  
The percentage utilization of the VMem (in Kbytes) that was allocated to the hosting VM.

- VCPU  
The percentage utilization of the VCPU (in MHz) allocated for the hosting VM.

- Transaction (transactions per second)  
For virtual applications discovered through a Load Balancer target or for application servers, the percentage utilization of the allocated transactions per second.

- Heap  
The percentage utilization of the application server’s heap.
Supply Chain of Entities

- **Transactions**
  The percentage utilization of the server’s transaction capacity, in transactions per second.

- **Response Time**
  The percentage utilization of the server’s allocated response time.

- **Threads**
  The percentage utilization of the server’s thread capacity.

**Actions**

For application servers, Turbonomic can execute resize actions on heap and threads.

**NOTE:**

For IBM WebSphere actions, it's possible that one WebSphere application server can have actions on heap and threads at the same time. In that case, do not execute both actions at the same time. In many cases, a WebSphere action is disruptive, and requires a restart of the WebSphere node. If you execute an action while the node is restarting, the action will fail. Before executing a second action on the same WebSphere node, be sure the node is not restarting in response to the first action.
Supply Chain - Business Application

A Business Application is a logical grouping that serves as the top-level container for a business service. It contains the nodes for that service (for example underlying services or applications), and the infrastructure to support those nodes.

In the Turbonomic supply chain, a Business Application consumes resources from one or more applications or databases. The supply chain extends from there to the VMs that host the application nodes, and any other infrastructure the applications require. The supply chain displays the nodes that the Business Application consumes as:

- **Database Servers**
  Any database server that AppDynamics supports and manages.

- **Application Servers**
  Any application server that AppDynamics supports and manages.

- **Applications**
  Applications discovered through AppDynamics that Turbonomic cannot recognize as application servers.
### Synopsis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Budget:</th>
<th>Business Applications have unlimited budget.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Provides:</td>
<td>Transactions to other applications and to end users</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumes:</td>
<td>Resources from one or more Database Servers, Application Servers, or Applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discovered through:</td>
<td>AppDynamics targets</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Monitored Resources

Turbonomic monitors the following resources for an application:

- **Transactions**
  - The utilization of the Business Application's transaction capacity, in transactions per second.

- **Response Time**
  - For on-prem, the utilization of the database server’s allocated response time.

### Actions

Turbonomic does not recommend actions for the Business Application, but it does recommend actions for the applications and infrastructure that the Business Application consumes.

**NOTE:**

The credentials for the service account that Turbonomic uses to access the AppDynamics target are read-only. For this reason, all of the actions that Turbonomic recommends through a Business Application are Recommend, only.
Supply Chain - Database Server

In AWS public cloud environments, a Database Server is a relational database that you have configured using AWS Relational Database Service (RDS). Turbonomic discovers RDS instances through your AWS targets, and uses its analysis to recommend or execute scaling actions as needed. Turbonomic uses AWS billing records to track the actual costs associated with your RDS instances, and to calculate potential savings or investment for scaling actions.

For on-prem, a database server is a database discovered through one of the associated database application targets or through an AppDynamics monitoring solution.

**Synopsis**

**Budget:**

- **Public Cloud**
  
  An RDS instance has unlimited budget.

- **On-prem**
  
  By default database servers have a priority of Mission Critical. This gives them unlimited budget.
### Supply Chain of Entities

#### Synopsis

If you override this setting to lower the priority of the database, it gains budget as a function of its activity, as measured by utilization of transactions. The more active a database is (the more transactions it performs), the more it is selling its services to a user.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provides:</th>
<th>Transactions to other applications and to end users.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Consumes: | **Public Cloud:**  
  • Physical resources in the availability zone (displayed as a Host)  
  • Storage  
  **On-prem:**  
  • VM resources, including VCPU, VMem, and VStorage. |
| Discovered through: |  
  • AWS targets:  
  • AppDynamics targets:  
  • Database server targets: |

### Database Server Discovery

To discover database servers, you can set up the following targets:

- **Public Cloud targets:**
  AWS accounts that have been set up as Turbonomic targets. Turbonomic discovers RDS instances on those AWS accounts.

- **AppDynamics Monitoring Solutions:**
  Turbonomic discovers database servers that are managed by AppDynamics solutions that you have set up as targets.

- **Database Servers**
  - Oracle 11g R2 and 12c
  - MySQL all 5.6 and 5.7 releases
Monitored Resources

Turbonomic monitors the following resources for an application:

- **VMem**
  The percentage utilization of the VMem (in Kbytes) that was allocated to the hosting database.

- **VCPU**
  The percentage utilization of the VCPU (in MHz) allocated for the database.

- **DBMem**
  The utilization of the database’s memory capacity.

- **Transaction**
  For on-prem, the utilization of the server’s transaction capacity, in transactions per second.

- **Response Time**
  For on-prem, the utilization of the database server’s allocated response time.

- **DBCacheHitRate**
  For on-prem, the percentage utilization of the database’s allocated cache hit rate, where a greater value indicates fewer disk reads for data.

- **TransactionLog**
  For on-prem, the percentage utilization of the database server’s capacity for storage devoted to transaction logs.

- **Connection**
  For on-prem, the utilization of the allocated connection capacity.

- **Cost**
  For AWS public clouds, the cost for the given RDS instance.

Actions

For RDS database servers, Turbonomic can recommend actions to scale the database according to demand.

For on-prem database servers, Turbonomic can recommend actions on database memory, connections, and the transaction log.

**NOTE:**
Resize actions based on the TransactionLog resource depend on support for vStorage in the underlying hypervisor technology. Because current versions of Hyper-V do not provide API support for vStorage, Turbonomic cannot support TransactionLog resize actions for database servers running on the Hyper-V platform.
Supply Chain - Container

An application container is a standalone, executable image of software that includes components to host an application.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Synopsis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Budget:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Provides:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consumes:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discovered through:</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Monitored Resources
Turbonomic monitors the following resources for a container:

- **Virtual CPU**
  The CPU capacity the container utilizes, measured in Gigahertz (Ghz)
- **Virtual Memory**
  The memory capacity the container utilizes, measured in Megabytes (MB)

Actions
Turbonomic can execute vertical Resize Container actions in Kubernetes and Pivotal Cloud Foundry platforms.

Constraints
Turbonomic considers the following constraints when making Resize Container decisions:

- For Kubernetes, Turbonomic represents ResourceQuota attributes as the commodities MemAllocation and CPUAllocation which are the defined Memory and CPU limits.
- For Cloud Foundry and Pivotal Cloud Foundry, Turbonomic imports the Quota Plan of the Organization and Spaces where Turbonomic represents MemAllocation as the memory limit (maximum memory allowed) and number of consumers as the total number of containers allowed.

Supply Chain - ContainerPod
A ContainerPod is a Kubernetes pod, which is a group of one or more containers with shared storage or network resources and a specification for how to run the containers together.

### Synopsis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Budget:</th>
<th>A container pod obtains its budget by selling resources to containers.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Provides:</td>
<td>Resources for containers to use:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Virtual CPU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Virtual Memory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumes:</td>
<td>Resources from virtual machines and virtual datacenters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discovered through:</td>
<td>Turbonomic discovers Kubernetes containers through the Kubeturbo pod that you have deployed in your environment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Monitored Resources

Turbonomic monitors the following resources for a container pod:

- **Virtual CPU**
  
  The CPU capacity the ContainerPod utilizes, measured in Gigahertz (Ghz)

- **Virtual Memory**
The memory capacity the ContainerPod utilizes, measured in Megabytes (MB)

Actions
Turbonomic can execute or recommend these actions:

• Move Pod to another Kubernetes Node
• Provision a new container pod (as part of application horizontal scaling)
• Suspend a container pod (as part of application horizontal scaling)

Kubernetes Constraints
Turbonomic respects constraints when making placement decisions. Kubernetes taints for nodes and tolerations for pods are treated as constraints. For example, if a pod has a toleration attribute that restricts it from moving to a certain node, Turbonomic will not move that pod to the restricted node.

In addition, Kubernetes node labels which Turbonomic imports are treated as constraints. Turbonomic considers node labels for Move Pod actions. For example, if a pod has a defined node label, Turbonomic will move that pod to a node with a matching label.

Supply Chain - Virtual Machine

![Diagram of Supply Chain - Virtual Machine](image-url)
A virtual machine (VM) is a software emulation of a physical machine, including OS, virtual memory and CPUs, and network ports. VMs host applications.

### Synopsis

| Budget: | A VM gains its budget by selling resources to the applications it hosts. If utilization is high enough, Turbonomic can allocate more resources to the VM, or move the VM to a host that has more resources. If utilization falls off, the VM loses budget. On the public cloud, if the budget isn't enough to pay for the host services, Turbonomic can post an action to suspend the VM. |
| Provides: | Resources for hosted applications to use:  
  • VMEM (Kbytes)  
  • VCPU (MHz)  
  • VStorage  
  • IOPS (storage access operations per second)  
  • Latency (capacity for disk latency in ms) |
| Consumes: | Physical host resources, including CPU and Mem. For public cloud environments, the Host node corresponds to cloud zones  
  • Storage |
| Discovered through: | Turbonomic discovers VMs through hypervisor targets. |

### Monitored Resources

Turbonomic monitors the following resources for a VM:

- **VMem**
  The percentage utilization of the virtual memory (measured in Kbytes) allocated for the VM.

- **VCPU**
  The percentage utilization of the virtual CPU capacity (measured in MHz) allocated for the VM.

- **VStorage**
  The percentage utilization of the virtual storage capacity (measured in Kbytes) allocated for the VM.

- **IOPS (Storage Access Operations per Second)**
  The percentage utilization of IOPS allocated for the VStorage on the VM.

- **Latency**
Supply Chain of Entities

The percentage utilization of latency (measured in ms) allocated for the VStorage on the VM.

Actions

Turbonomic recommends the following actions for a VM:

- **Terminate or Remove a VM** (public cloud, only)
  For a VM that has been suspended for a long period.

- **Suspend VM** (public cloud, only)
  For low utilization of VM’s resources.

- **Resize Up VM**
  - High resource utilization on VM

- **Resize Down VM**
  - Low resource utilization on VM that must not shut down

- **Move VM for:**
  - High resource utilization on VM
  - High resource utilization on hosting PM
  - Excess IOPS or Latency in VStorage
  - Workload placement violation
  - Hosting PM is underutilized (move before suspending PM)

- **Move VM Storage**
  For excess utilization of the current datastore, or for more efficient utilization of datastores in the environment.

- **Reconfigure Storage**
  For overutilized storage resources, add VStorage capacity.
  For underutilized storage resources, remove VStorage capacity.

- **Reconfigure VM**
  Change network and storage configuration. For example, Turbonomic recommends this action if the VM is configured to use a network that it cannot access.

Azure Template Requirements

In Azure environments, some templates require workloads to be configured in specific ways, and some workload configurations require templates that support specific features. When Turbonomic generates resize actions in Azure, these actions consider the following features:

- **Accelerated Networking (AN)**
In an Azure environment, not all templates support AN, also, not all workloads on AN templates actually enable AN. Turbonomic maintains a dynamic group of workloads that have AN enabled, and it assigns a policy to that group to exclude any templates that do not support AN. In this way, if a workload is on a template that supports AN, and that workload has enabled AN, then Turbonomic will not recommend an action that would move the workload to a non-AN template.

- **Azure Load Balancer**
  Turbonomic recognizes Standard and Basic VM templates, and whether the workloads run in a Load Balancer environment. If a workload is load balanced, then Turbonomic will not recommend a resize to a template that does not support load balancing.

In addition, Turbonomic recognizes processor types that you currently use for your workloads. If your workload is on a GPU-based instance, then Turbonomic will only recommend moves to other compatible GPU-based instance types. For these workloads, Turbonomic does not recommend resize actions.

### AWS Template Requirements

In AWS some templates require workloads to be configured in specific ways before they can move to those templates. If Turbonomic recommends moving a workload that is not suitably configured onto one of these templates, then it sets the action to Recommend Only, and describes the reason. Turbonomic will not automate the move, even if you have set the action mode for that scope to Automated. You can execute the move manually, after you have properly configured the instance.

Note that if you have workloads that you cannot configure to support these requirements, then you can set up a policy to keep Turbonomic from making these recommendations. Create a group that contains these workloads, and then create a placement policy for that scope. In the policy, exclude the templates that do require ENA support.

For information about placement policies, see Automation Policies (page 229). For information about excluding templates, see the entry on "Excluded Templates" in Analysis Policies: VMs (page 269).

The template requirements that Turbonomic recognizes are:

- **Enhanced Network Adapters**
  Some instances can run on templates that support Enhanced Networking via the Elastic Network Adapter (ENA), while others can run on templates that do not offer this support. Turbonomic can recommend moving an instance that does not support ENA onto a template that does. To make that move, you must perform the required configuration of the instance before you can execute the move. If you move a non-ENA VM to a template that requires ENA, then AWS cannot start up the instance after the move. Before executing the move, you must enable ENA on the VM.

  For information about ENA configuration, see "Enabling Enhanced Networking with the Elastic Network Adapter (ENA) on Windows Instances" in the AWS documentation.

- **Linux AMI Virtualization Type**
  An Amazon Linux AMI can use ParaVirtual (PV) or Hardware Virtual Machine (HVM) virtualization. Turbonomic can recommend moving a PV instance to an HVM template that does not include the necessary PV drivers.

  To check the virtualization type of an instance, open the Amazon EC2 console to the Details pane, and review the Virtualization field for that instance.

- **64-bit vs 32-bit**
Not all AWS templates can support a 32-bit instance. Turbonomic can recommend moving a 32-bit instance to a template that only supports a 64-bit platform.

- NVMe Block
  Some templates expose EBS volumes as NVMe block devices, but not all instances are configured with NVMe drivers. Turbonomic can recommend moving such an instance to a template that supports NVMe. Before executing the move, you must install the NVMe drivers on the instance.

In addition, Turbonomic recognizes processor types that you currently use for your workloads. For move or resize actions, Turbonomic keeps your workloads on instance types with compatible processors:

- GPU-based instances:
  If your workload is on a GPU-based instance, then Turbonomic will only recommend moves to other compatible GPU-based instance types. For these workloads, Turbonomic does not recommend resize actions.

- ARM-based instances
  If your workload is on an ARM-based instance, then Turbonomic will only recommend moves and resizes to other compatible ARM-based instance types.

### Resizing Storage Capacity in AWS Environments

When a VM instance needs more storage capacity Turbonomic recommends actions to move the instance to a template that provides more storage. Note that AWS supports both Elastic Block Store (EBS) and Instance storage. Turbonomic recognizes these storage types as it recommends storage actions.

If the root storage for your instance is Instance Storage, then Turbonomic will not recommend a storage action. This is because Instance Storage is ephemeral, and such an action would cause the instance to lose all the stored data.

If the root storage is EBS, then Turbonomic recommends storage actions. EBS is persistent, and the data will remain after the action. However, if the instance uses Instance Storage for extra storage, then Turbonomic does not include that storage in its calculations or actions.

### VM Naming in Pivotal Operations Manager

When Turbonomic discovers VMs in a Pivotal Operations Manager environment, it assigns VM names that identify the VM in the context of your Pivotal environment. The name is expressed in the following tokens:

```
{PCF Job name}#{index number}([{IaaS VM name}]
```

### Supply Chain - Virtual Datacenter
A virtual datacenter (vDC) is a collection or pool of resources that groups the resources around specific requirements or business needs. These vDCs can implement boundaries for the cloud infrastructure, and then can establish tenant groups on that infrastructure.

Turbonomic displays these pools in the Supply Chain as Virtual Datacenter entities. It discovers vDCs for:

- **Container Orchestration Platforms**:
  - Kubernetes
  - Cloud Foundry
  - Pivotal Operations Manager

- **Private Cloud Platforms**
  - vCloud Director
  - vCenter Server
  - Virtual Machine Manager
  - CloudStack
  - OpenStack
Container Orchestration Virtual Datacenters

Container Orchestration platforms like Kubernetes or Cloud Foundry use logical pools of resources to manage scheduling of workload. For example, administrators can pool resources for different organizations within the enterprise, and assign different policies to each pool. Turbonomic represents these pools as Virtual Datacenters (vDCs).

Turbonomic creates vDCs for the following platforms:

- **Kubernetes**
  Each Namespace appears in Turbonomic as a vDC. A Namespace includes a ResourceQuota object to determine the capacity of this vDC.

- **Cloud Foundry**
  An Org appears in Turbonomic as a vDC. The Org includes a current Quota Plan, which determines the capacity of this vDC.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Synopsis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Budget:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Provides:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consumes:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discovered through:</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Monitored Resources**

Turbonomic monitors the following resources for a Container Orchestration vDC:

- **Mem**
  The percentage of memory that is reserved or in use for this vDC, measured in Kbytes.

- **CPU**
  The percentage utilization of CPU resources allocated to the vDC.

- **Storage**
  The percentage usage of storage that is allocated to the vDC.
Supply Chain of Entities

Actions

Turbonomic does not recommend actions to perform on a Container Orchestrator vDC. Instead, it recommends actions to perform on the entities that provide resources to the vDC.

Private Cloud Virtual Datacenters

In private cloud environments, Turbonomic discovers the infrastructure that provides resources to the cloud, and the workloads that run on the cloud. To manage these resources, private clouds organize the infrastructure into Provider and Consumer Virtual Datacenters.

NOTE:
Different targets use different names to refer to Virtual Datacenters. In the Turbonomic supply chain, these entities are all represented by Consumer and Provider VDCs, as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Turbonomic</th>
<th>vCloud Director</th>
<th>vCenter Server</th>
<th>VMM</th>
<th>CloudStack</th>
<th>OpenStack</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consumer VDC</td>
<td>Organization VDC</td>
<td>Resource Pool (Child)</td>
<td>Tenant or TenantQuota</td>
<td>Accounts</td>
<td>Tenant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provider VDC</td>
<td>Provider VDC</td>
<td>Resource Pool (Root)</td>
<td>Cloud</td>
<td>Pod</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Provider Virtual Datacenters

A provider virtual datacenter (vDC) is a collection of physical resources (hosts and datastores) within a cloud stack. The cloud administrator has access to these resources, and defines the datacenter members. A Provider vDC is created to manage resources that will be allocated to external customers through one or more Consumer vDCs.

Synopsis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>A Provider vDC gains its budget by selling resources to the Consumer vDCs that it hosts. If utilization falls off, the datacenter loses budget. Ultimately, if the budget isn’t enough to pay for the services it consumes, Turbonomic will recommend decommissioning the Provider vDC.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Provides:</td>
<td>Physical resources such as hosts and datastores to Consumer vDCs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumes:</td>
<td>Hosts and datastores from the physical infrastructure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discovered through:</td>
<td>Turbonomic discovers vDCs through private cloud stack managers such as vCloud Director.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Monitored Resources

Turbonomic monitors the following resources for a Provider vDC:

- **Mem**
  
  The percentage of physical machine memory that is reserved or in use, measured in Kbytes.

- **CPU**
  
  The percentage utilization of CPU resources allocated to the Provider vDC.

- **Storage**
  
  The percentage usage of storage that is allocated to the Provider vDC.

Actions

Turbonomic does not recommend actions to perform on a Provider vDC. Instead, it recommends actions to perform on the entities that provide resources to the vDC.

Consumer Virtual Datacenters

A Consumer Virtual Datacenter (vDC) is a collection of resources that are available for external customers to manage workload through the private cloud. It is an environment customers can use to store, deploy, and operate virtual systems. Consumer Datacenters use the resources supplied by a Provider Datacenter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Synopsis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Budget:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Provides:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consumes:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discovered through:</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

While users can see some of the physical resources that support the Consumer vDC, consumer-level users cannot modify these physical resources. Users of Consumer vDCs make changes to how the virtual devices are deployed in that environment, but they must ask the Provider vDC administrator to add more physical resources to be used by the
Consumer vDC. Likewise, Turbonomic can change resources on the VMs running in the vDC, but it does not make any changes to physical resources through this vDC.

Monitored Resources
Turbonomic monitors the following resources for a Consumer vDC:

- **Mem**
  The percentage of physical machine memory that is reserved or in use for this datacenter, measured in Kbytes.

- **CPU**
  The percentage utilization of CPU resources allocated to the datacenter.

- **Storage**
  The percentage usage of storage that is allocated to the vDC.

Actions
Turbonomic does not recommend actions to perform on a Consumer vDC. Instead, it recommends actions to perform on the entities running in the Provider vDC.

Supply Chain - Host

For on-prem environments, a host is a server that runs processes, including hypervisor processes to host virtual workloads. Note that a host is not necessarily a physical piece of hardware. A VM can be set up as a server that runs...
a hypervisor, and in turn it can host other VMs within its processing space. However, it’s most usual to use physical hardware as your hosts.

On the public cloud a host is an availability zone. This is where your cloud workloads run.

### Synopsis

| Budget: | • Public Cloud
Availability zones have unlimited budget.
• On-prem
A host gains its budget by selling resources to the workloads that run on it. The more workloads running on a host, the more budget the host has to purchase storage and datacenter resources. If utilization of a host is high enough, Turbonomic can recommend that you provision a new one. If utilization falls off, the host loses budget. Ultimately, if the budget isn’t enough to pay for the services it consumes, Turbonomic will recommend to suspend or power off the host. |
| Provides: | Host resources for VMs to use:
• Mem (Kbytes)
• CPU (MHz)
• IO (throughput on the I/O bus)
• Net (network throughput)
• Swap (swap rate capacity measured in bytes/sec)
• Ballooning (sharing of memory among hosted VMs)
• CPU Ready Queue (wait time on the queue in ms) |
| Consumes: | Datacenter resources (physical space, cooling, etc.) and storage. |
| Discovered through: | Turbonomic discovers hosts through hypervisor targets. For some hypervisor vendors, the host is the target, and for others the hosts are managed by the specified target. |

### Monitored Resources

For public cloud environments, Turbonomic discovers the resources that an availability zone provides, including:

- **Templates**
  The templates and template families that each zone or region delivers. This includes template capacity and cost for workload resources.
- **Account Services**
These include storage modes, services the accounts offer for enhanced metrics, and services for different storage capabilities.

- **Relational Database Services (RDS)**
  The RDS capabilities each cloud account provides.

- **Storage Tiers**
  Turbonomic discovers the storage tier that supports your workloads, and uses the tier pricing to calculate storage cost.

- **Billing**
  Turbonomic discovers the billing across the zones and regions to predict costs in the future, and to track ongoing costs. This includes comparing on-demand pricing to Reserved Instance billing.

For on-prem environments, Turbonomic monitors the following resources on a host:

- **Mem**
  The percentage of the host’s memory that is reserved or in use, measured in Kbytes.

- **CPU**
  The percentage of the host’s CPU cycles that are reserved or in use, measured in MHz.

- **IO**
  The data rate through the host’s IO adapters. Charts show the percentage of the host’s IO capacity that is in use, measured in Kbytes per second.

- **Net**
  The data rate through the host’s network adapters. Charts show the percentage of the host’s network throughput capacity that is in use, measured in Kbytes per second.

- **Swap**
  The percentage of the host’s allocated swap space that is in use, measured in Kbytes.

- **Balloon**
  The sharing of memory among VMs running on the host. Charts show percentage of the host’s ballooning capacity that is in use, measured in Kbytes.

- **1, 2, 4... CPU Ready**
  The percentage of the host’s allocated ready queue capacity (measured in msec) that is in use, for the CPU ready queues. Charts show the percentage of wait time for all the VMs on a given host.

**Actions**

For the public cloud, Turbonomic does not recommend host actions.

Turbonomic recommends the following actions for an on-prem host:

- **Start Host**
For increased demand on physical resources, start up a suspended host.

- **Provision Host**
  For increased demand of physical resources, install a new host in the environment. Turbonomic will then move workload to that host.

- **Suspend Host**
  For underutilized resources on a host, move existing workload to other hosts and suspend the host.

- **Terminate (Remove) Host**
  For a host that has been suspended for a period of time, remove the PM.

**NOTE:**
Turbonomic discovers VMware HA configurations in clusters, and considers the reserved resources in its calculations. For tolerated host failures, or a reserved percentage of cluster resources, Turbonomic automatically sets utilization constraints for that cluster. If you configure a failover host, Turbonomic reserves that host for HA and will not move VMs to it.

### Supply Chain - Storage

![Diagram of supply chain - storage](image)

Turbonomic represents storage as Datastores. A Datastore is a logical grouping of one or more physical storage devices that serve workload storage requirements.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Synopsis</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Budget:</strong></td>
<td>A Datastore gains its budget by selling resources to the VMs it serves. If utilization of a Datastore is high enough, Turbonomic can recommend that you provision a new one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Provides:</strong></td>
<td>Host resources for VMs to use:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Storage amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• IOPS (storage access operations per second)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Latency (capacity for disk latency in ms)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Synopsis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consumes:</th>
<th>Disk arrays (or aggregates)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Discovered through:</td>
<td>Turbonomic discovers on-prem Datastores through hypervisor targets and storage controllers. On the public cloud, it discovers the storage tiers available to your target cloud accounts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Monitored Resources

Turbonomic monitors the following resources for a datastore:

- **Storage**
  The percentage of the datastore’s capacity (measured in Kbytes) that is in use.

- **IOPS**
  Storage access operations per second. Charts in the user interface show the percentage of allocated IOPS capacity that is used on a datastore.

- **Latency**
  The percentage of allocated latency (measured in ms) that is in use on the datastore. This measures the latency experienced by all VMs and hosts that access the datastore.

## Actions

Turbonomic recommends the following actions for a datastore:

- **Start Storage**
  For high utilization of storage resources, start a suspended datastore.

- **Provision Storage**
  For high utilization of storage resources, provision a new datastore.

- **Suspend Storage**
  For low utilization of storage resources, move served VMs to other datastores and suspend this one.

- **Terminate Storage (Remove)**
  For a datastore that has been suspended for a period of time, remove the datastore.

- **Move**
  For high utilization of physical storage, move datastore to a different disk array (aggregate).

- **Resize**
Increase or decrease the datastore capacity.

Supply Chain - Disk Array

A Disk Array (an aggregate) is a data storage system made up of multiple disk drives. For example, a RAID is an aggregate that implements redundancy and other data management features. A disk array provides storage volumes to serve the storage requirements of physical machines. It uses the resources of one storage controller, which manages the disk array operation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Synopsis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Budget:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Provides:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consumes:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discovered through:</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Monitored Resources

Turbonomic monitors the following resources for a disk array:

- **Storage**
  
The percentage utilization of the storage (measured in Kbytes) allocated for the given disk array. Allocated storage is the sum of the aggregated physical storage that the array exposes to the environment.

- **Storage Provisioned**
  
The percentage utilization of the storage that was provisioned for this disk array. This encompasses over-provisioning of storage, as well as thin-provisioning on the VMs, deduplication, compression, and other storage optimizations. For example, assume storage over-provisioning of 200% as the only storage optimization. If Storage Utilization was at 100%, then Storage Provisioned would be 50% (half of the over-provisioned storage in use). A more realistic situation would have the current Storage Utilization at 50%, and Storage Provisioned would show a value of 25%.

- **IOPS - Storage Access Operations per Second**
  
The percentage utilization of allocated IOPS. The disk array aggregates this value for all its volumes. In other words, all volumes on a given disk array show the same value for this resource.

- **Latency**
  
The percentage utilization of allocated latency. The disk array aggregates this value for all its volumes. In other words, all volumes on a given disk array show the same value for this resource.

Actions

Turbonomic recommends the following actions for a disk array:

- **Provision Disk Array**
  
  For high utilization of the disk array's storage, provision a new disk array (recommendation, only).

- **Start Disk Array**
  
  For high utilization of disk array, start a suspended disk array (recommendation, only).

- **Suspend Disk Array**
  
  For low utilization of the disk array’s storage, move VMs to other datastores and suspend volumes on the disk array (recommendation, only).

- **Move Disk Array (for NetApp Cluster-Mode, only)**
  
  For high utilization of Storage Controller resources, Turbonomic can move an aggregate to another storage controller. The storage controllers must be running.
  
  For high IOPS or Latency, a move is always off of the current disk array. All the volumes on a given disk array show the same IOPS and Latency, so moving to a volume on the same array would not fix these issues.

- **Move VM**
For high utilization of Storage on a volume, Turbonomic can move a VM to another volume. The new volume can be on the current disk array, on some other disk array, or on any other datastore.

For high IOPS or Latency, a move is always off of the current disk array. All the volumes on a given disk array show the same IOPS and Latency, so moving to a volume on the same array would not fix these issues.

- Move Datastore
  
  To balance utilization of disk array resources, Turbonomic can move a datastore to another array.

**Action Automation for NetApp Storage Systems**

For NetApp storage systems, the actions Turbonomic can automatically perform depend on the NetApp version you are running, and whether the system is running in cluster mode:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Automated Action</th>
<th>7-Mode</th>
<th>Cluster-Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Move VM between datastores, on the same disk array</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move VM between datastores on different disk arrays</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move Datastore between disk arrays on the same storage controller</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move Datastore between disk arrays on different storage controllers</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resize Storage</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resize Disk Array</td>
<td>No — Resize up, only</td>
<td>No — Resize up, only</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition, for a system running in Cluster-Mode, Turbonomic can recommend moving an aggregate to another storage controller.

**Supply Chain - Storage Controller**
A Storage Controller is a device that manages one or more disk arrays. The storage controller provides CPU cycles to perform storage management tasks for each disk array it manages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Synopsis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Budget:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Provides:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consumes:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discovered through:</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Monitored Resources**

Turbonomic monitors the following resources for a storage controller:

- **CPU**
  The percentage utilization of CPU resources allocated to the storage controller.

- **Storage**
  The percentage of the storage capacity that is in use. The storage allocated to a storage controller is the total of all the physical space available to aggregates managed by that storage controller.

- **IOPS**
  Storage access operations per second. Charts show the percentage of allocated IOPS capacity that is used by the aggregates managed by the storage controller.

- **Latency**
  The percentage of allocated latency (measured in ms) that is in use for this storage controller. This measures the latency experienced by all VMs and hosts that access the managed storage.

**Actions**

Turbonomic recommends the following actions for a storage controller:

- **Provision Storage Controller (recommendation, only)**
  For high utilization of the storage controller’s CPU, provision a new storage controller, and then move disk arrays to it.
Supply Chain - IO Module

An IO Module connects the compute resources on a chassis to the fabric domain via the Fabric Interconnect. It provides the servers on the chassis with Net resources. Typical installations provide two IO Modules per chassis.

Turbonomic supports IO Modules when you have installed the Fabric Control Module license.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Synopsis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Budget:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Provides:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consumes:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discovered through:</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Monitored Resources

Turbonomic monitors the following resources for an IO Module:

- Net

  The percentage utilization of the total throughput (storage and network, combined) allocated for the IO Module.

Actions

Turbonomic does not recommend actions to perform on an IO Module.

Supply Chain - Fabric Interconnect

A Fabric Interconnect connects servers in a computing fabric to the fabric’s network and storage resources. It provides network bandwidth to the servers in the platform.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Synopsis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Budget:</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Supply Chain of Entities

### Synopsis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provides</th>
<th>Net resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consumes</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discovered through:</td>
<td>Turbonomic discovers Fabric Interconnects through managers of fabric platforms (such as UCS) that use them.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Monitored Resources

Turbonomic monitors the following resources for Fabric Interconnect:

- **Net**
  
  The percentage utilization of the total network throughput allocated for the Fabric Interconnect.

### Actions

Turbonomic recommends the following actions to perform on a Fabric Interconnect

- Resize port to increase size.

### Supply Chain - Chassis

A chassis houses the servers that are part of a computing fabric. It provides compute, memory, storage, and bandwidth resources.

#### Synopsis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>A Chassis has unlimited budget.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Provides:</td>
<td>Chassis resources (physical space, cooling, etc.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumes:</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discovered through:</td>
<td>Turbonomic discovers Chassis through fabric manager targets.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Monitored Resources

Turbonomic monitors the following resources for the servers in a chassis:

- **Power**
  The percentage of the acceptable range of power consumption that is utilized by this chassis.

- **Cooling**
  The percentage of the acceptable temperature range that is utilized by this chassis. As the chassis temperature nears the high or low running temperature limits, this percentage increases.

Actions

Turbonomic does not recommend actions for a chassis.

Supply Chain - Domain

A Domain represents the computing fabric network. It provides Network Throughput resources to give the fabric northbound network connectivity.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Synopsis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Budget:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Provides:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consumes:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discovered through:</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Actions

Turbonomic does not recommend actions to perform on a Domain.
Supply Chain - Datacenter

For on-prem environments, a datacenter is the sum of VMs, PMs, datastores, and network devices that are managed by a given hypervisor target. A datacenter provides compute, memory, storage, and bandwidth resources.

For public cloud environments, a datacenter is the cloud region. The hosts that get resources from the datacenter are availability zones within that region.

### Synopsis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Budget:</strong></th>
<th>A Datacenter has unlimited budget.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Provides:** | For on-prem, physical space, cooling, etc.  
For the cloud, billing records, templates, and services. |
| **Consumes:** | N/A |
| **Discovered through:** | • On-prem  
Turbonomic discovers Datacenters through hypervisor targets.  
• Public Cloud  
Turbonomic discovers zones through public cloud targets. |
Monitored Resources

For public cloud environments, Turbonomic discovers the regions and availability zones that are managed by each cloud account you have set up as a target. This discovery includes:

- **Templates**
  The templates and template families that each zone or region delivers. This includes template capacity and cost for workload resources.

- **Account Services**
  These include storage modes, services the accounts offer for enhanced metrics, and services for different storage capabilities.

- **Relational Database Services (RDS)**
  The RDS capabilities each cloud account provides.

- **Storage Tiers**
  Turbonomic discovers the storage tier that supports your workloads, and uses the tier pricing to calculate storage cost.

- **Billing**
  Turbonomic discovers the billing across the zones and regions to predict costs in the future, and to track ongoing costs. This includes comparing on-demand pricing to Reserved Instance billing.

For on-prem environments, Turbonomic does not monitor resources directly from the datacenter, but it does monitor the following resources, aggregated for the hosts in a datacenter:

- **Mem**
  The percentage of the PM’s memory that is reserved or in use, measured in Kbytes.

- **CPU**
  The percentage of the PM’s CPU cycles that are reserved or in use, measured in MHz.

- **IO**
  The data rate through the PM’s IO adapters. Charts in the user interface show the percentage of the PM’s IO capacity that is in use, measured in Kbytes per second.

- **Net**
  The data rate through the PM’s network adapters. Charts in the user interface show the percentage of the PM’s network throughput capacity that is in use, measured in Kbytes per second.

- **Swap**
  The percentage of the PM’s allocated swap space that is in use, measured in Kbytes.

- **Balloon**
  The sharing of memory among VMs running on the host. Charts in the user interface show percentage of the PM’s ballooning capacity that is in use, measured in Kbytes.
Supply Chain of Entities

• 1, 2, 4 CPU Ready

The percentage of the PM’s allocated ready queue capacity (measured in msec) that is in use, for 1, 2, and 4 CPU ready queues. Charts in the user interface show the percentage or wait time for all the VMs on a given host PM.

Actions

Turbonomic does not recommend actions to perform on a datacenter. Instead, it recommends actions to perform on the devices running in the datacenter.

Supply Chain - VPod

A VPod represents a set of consumers that communicate frequently with each other over the network. For example, VMs that host processes for the same distributed application are likely to pass data between each other on a regular basis. VPods provide a way to calculate the cost of network throughput according to where the VPod entities reside in the hardware layer. Turbonomic groups providers into DPods — For more information, see Supply Chain - DPods (page 89).

There are four levels of cost for network flow:

• Zero cost
  The consumers use the same provider — For example, VMs that reside on the same host. These consumers have access to infinite network capacity.

• Low cost
  The consumers use providers that are under the same switch. Network capacity for these consumers is determined by the capacity of the providers.

• Medium cost
  The consumers communicate across switch nodes. Network capacity is the capacity of the uplink, divided by the number of providers sharing it.

• High cost
  The consumers communicate across the cloud. Turbonomic calculates a high cost for throughput to reflect the impact to performance you would experience if consumers had cross-cloud dependencies.

Synopsis

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Budget:</td>
<td>VPods have infinite budget — They can consume whatever network resources they need.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provides:</td>
<td>Network throughput to VMs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumes:</td>
<td>Network throughput.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Supply Chain of Entities

**Synopsis**

Discovered through:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Turbonomic discovers DPods through the following targets:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Arista</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Cisco Tetration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Netflow data collectors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• SFlow data collectors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Monitored Resources**

Turbonomic monitors the following resources for a VPod:

- **Flow**
  The percentage of network flow capacity that is utilized by the VPod. This is divided into Flow1 (low cost) and Flow2 (medium cost) utilization.

- **Mem**
  The percentage of providers’ memory that is utilized by the VPod.

- **CPU**
  The percentage of the providers’ CPU cycles that are utilized by the VPod.

- **Storage**
  The percentage of the providers’ allocated storage that is utilized by the VPod.

**Actions**

Turbonomic recommends the following actions for a VPod:

- **Move a VPod to different DPods (to providers under a different switch)**

In addition, Turbonomic can move a VM into a VPod to reduce network latency.

**Supply Chain - DPod**

A DPod represents a set of closely connected providers — For example a storage controller, its datastores, and the hosts that consume those storage resources. A unified fabric chassis or an Arista switch can also identify the makeup of a DPod. Turbonomic uses DPods as providers for VPods — For more information, see [Supply Chain - VPods](#page-88).
NOTE:
To enable the discovery of DPods, you must configure Network Flow targets. For more information, see "Network Flow Targets" in the Target Configuration Guide.

## Synopsis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Budget:</th>
<th>DPods get their budget by selling resources to VPods.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Provides:</td>
<td>Network throughput to VPods.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumes:</td>
<td>Network throughput from underlying hosts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Discovered through:**
- Turbonomic discovers DPods through the following targets:
  - Arista
  - Cisco Tetration
  - Netflow data collectors
  - SFlow data collectors

## Monitored Resources

Turbonomic monitors the following resources for a DPod:
- **Flow**
  The percentage of network throughput capacity that is utilized by the DPod.
- **Mem**
  The percentage of underlying host memory that is utilized by the DPod.
- **CPU**
  The percentage of the underlying host CPU cycles that are utilized by the DPod.
- **Storage**
  The percentage of the allocated storage that is utilized by the DPod.

## Actions

Turbonomic recommends the following actions for a DPod:
- **Provision a new DPod** — For example, recommend adding a new storage controller, its datastores, and hosts consuming the storage resources
Working With a Scoped View

By default, the Home Page shows a Global view of your environment. To drill down into specifics of your environment, you can set a scope to your Turbonomic session. A scoped view shows details about the specific entities in that scope.

Once you have set a scope, you can use the Supply Chain to zoom in on a related tier to see details about the entities on that tier.

If you find the current scope to be useful, you can save it a a named group. Using named groups is an easy way to return to different scopes that you have saved.

Things You Can Do

• Scoping the Turbonomic Session (page 91)
• Navigating With the Supply Chain (page 107)

Scoping the Turbonomic Session

The default scope for the Home Page shows an overview of the global environment. What if you want to focus on less than the global environment? Assume you are responsible for a subset of workloads in your environment. This could be:

• Workloads managed on a single host cluster
• The workloads in a single datacenter
• The workloads managed by a given public cloud account
• A custom group of workloads you have created in Turbonomic
It's easy to set the session scope so that Turbonomic zooms in on the part of the environment that you want to inspect. Once you set the scope, you can get a quick picture of system health for that scope. If you find a certain scope to be useful, you can save it as a named group that you can return to later.

1. Navigate to the Search Page.
   
   Click to navigate to the Search Page. This is where you can choose the scope you want.

2. Choose the type of entities to search.
   
   In the Search Page, choose a type of entities that you want to search through. Find the list of entity types on the left. Select All to search the complete environment. Or you can focus on entities by type, by groups, or by clusters. When you select an entity type, the page updates to show all entities of that type.

3. Use Search to filter the listing.
   
   For example, if you're showing All and you search for "Development", then you will see all clusters, groups, and entities with "Development" in their names.
4. Expand an entry to see details.

   For example, expand a group or an entity to see utilization details and pending actions.

   **NOTE:**
   For hosts in the public cloud, utilization and capacity for host and datacenter resources don't affect Turbonomic calculations. When you expand an entry for a public cloud host, the details do not include information for these resources.

5. Select one or more entries to set the focus of the Home Page.
Working With a Scoped View

If you choose a category of entities to limit the list, then you can select one or more of the entities for your session scope. After you select the entities you want to include in your scope, click **SCOPE TO SELECTION** to set the session scope to those entities.

If you choose **All**, or if you choose Groups or Clusters, then you can select a single entry to set the scope for your session. When you select an entry in the list, that sets the focus of the Home Page. For example, if you select a cluster in the **Search** listing, you set the Home Page focus to that cluster. Use the Home Page bread crumbs to set a different scope, or you can return to **Search** and set a different scope from there.
Overview Charts

The Overview Charts show your environment's overall operating health for the current session scope. A glance at the Overview gives you insights into service performance health, overall efficiency of your workload distribution, projections into the future, and trends over time.

The charts in this view show data for the current scope that you have set for the Turbonomic session. For the global scope, the charts roll up average, minimum, and peak values for the whole environment. When you reduce the scope (for example, set the scope to a cluster), the charts show values for the entities in that scope.

Some charts included in this view are:

- **Pending Actions**
  See all the actions that are pending for the current scope.

- **Health**
  Quickly see the health of the entities in this scope- How many entities have risks, and how critical the risks are.

- **Optimized Improvements**
  A comparison of utilization in your environment before executing the pending actions, and then after.

- **Capacity and Usage**
  This chart lists resources that are used by the current scope of entities, showing utilization as a percentage of the capacity that is currently in use.

- **Multiple Resources**
See the utilization over time of various resources that are used by the current scope of entities.

- **Top Entities**
  For example, Top Virtual Machines. These charts list the top consumer entities in the current scope.

- **Risks Avoided**
  Each action addresses one or more identified risks or opportunities in your environment. This chart shows how many risks have been addressed by the executed actions.

- **Accepted Actions**
  This chart shows how many actions have been executed or ignored, and whether they have been executed manually or automatically.

**What You Can Do:**

- Set scope: See [Scoping the TurbonOMIC Session](#)
- Create new charts: See [Creating and Editing Chart Widgets](#)

**Setting Chart Focus**

The charts update to reflect the focus that you have set for your viewing session. While viewing the Overview Charts, you can set the focus in different ways:

- **Set Supply Chain Focus**
  Choose a tier in the supply chain to set the view focus - see [Navigating With the Supply Chain](#)

- **Set Scope**
  Use **Search** to set the scope of the viewing session - see [Scoping the TurbonOMIC Session](#)

**Chart Time Frame**

You can set a time frame from recent hours to the past year, and set that to the charts in the view. Use the Time Slider to set specific start and end times within that range. The green section in the slider shows that you can set the time range to include a projection into the future. For this part of the time range, charts show the results you would see after you execute the current set of pending actions.
For most charts, you can also configure the chart to hard-code the time range. In that case, the chart always shows the same time scale, no matter what scale and range you set for the given view.

Note that Turbonomic stores historical data in its database. As you run Turbonomic in your environment for more time, then you can set a time range to show more history.

Details View

The Details View shows more details about the entities in your session scope. These charts focus on the utilization of resources by these entities, so you can get a sense of activity in that scope over time.

![Diagram of Details View](image)

The Details View shows more details about the entities in your session scope. These charts focus on the utilization of resources by these entities, so you can get a sense of activity in that scope over time.

What You Can Do:

- Set scope: See Scoping the Turbonomic Session (page 91)
- Create new charts: See Creating and Editing Chart Widgets (page 157)

Setting Chart Focus

The charts update to reflect the focus that you have set for your viewing session. While viewing the Overview Charts, you can set the focus in different ways:

- Set Supply Chain Focus
  Choose a tier in the supply chain to set the view focus - see Navigating With the Supply Chain (page 107)
• Set Scope

Use **Search** to set the scope of the viewing session - see [Scoping the Turbonomic Session](#) *(page 91)*

**Chart Time Frame**

You can set a time frame from recent hours to the past year, and set that to the charts in the view. Use the Time Slider to set specific start and end times within that range. The green section in the slider shows that you can set the time range to include a projection into the future. For this part of the time range, charts show the results you would see after you execute the current set of pending actions.

For most charts, you can also configure the chart to hard-code the time range. In that case, the chart always shows the same time scale, no matter what scale and range you set for the given view.

Note that Turbonomic stores historical data in its database. As you run Turbonomic in your environment for more time, then you can set a time range to show more history.
Scope Policies

The Policy View gives you a look at the Automation Policies that are set for the entities in the current scope. For each policy, you can see whether it has been enabled or disabled. In addition, you can create new policies and apply them to that scope.

To edit a policy, click the policy name. You can then change the policy settings, or enable/disable the policy.

To see the current policy settings, expand a settings category. For each setting, you can see which policy determines the value—Either the default policy or a custom policy that has been applied to this scope.

When you create a new policy, it automatically includes the current scope. You can add other groups to the policy scope if you like. Note that you can enable more than one policy for the same scope. If two policies apply different values for the same setting, then the most conservative value takes effect.

For more information, see Automation Policies (page 229).
Entity Placement Constraints

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROVIDERS</th>
<th>CURRENT PLACEMENT</th>
<th>OTHER POTENTIAL PLACEMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Host</td>
<td>dc17-host-01-eng.vmturbo.com</td>
<td>4 Hosts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONSUMERS</th>
<th>CURRENT CONSUMERS</th>
<th>Constraints</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB Server</td>
<td>1 Database Server</td>
<td>Constraints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>App</td>
<td>1 Application</td>
<td>Constraints</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Click to see more details

When you drill down to a single entity, you can see details about the entity’s relationships in the supply chain. This shows you which entities provide resources to this entity, and which entities consume resources that this entity provides. When considering providers for this entity, you can see the name of each current provider, and how many alternative providers Turbonomic can choose from if the current one becomes overutilized.

Reviewing the constraints on an entity helps you understand the actions that Turbonomic recommends. If an action seems questionable to you, then you should look at the constraints on the affected entities. It's possible that some policy or constraint is in effect, and it keeps Turbonomic from recommending a more obvious action.

Experimenting With Placement Constraints

For each provider or consumer in the list, you can open a Constraints fly-out that gives more details about limits on the current element’s supply chain relationships.

For example, assume the PROVIDERS list shows your VM’s CURRENT PLACEMENT is on Host A, and for OTHER POTENTIAL PLACEMENT you see that Turbonomic can choose from 4 hosts. When you click Constraints, the flyout displays a list of host constraints that currently result in the four potential hosts for this VM.
Working With a Scoped View

The list information includes:

- **CONSTRAINT TYPE**
  Most constraints are boundaries that are inherent in your environment such as a cluster boundaries or a networks, or they can be constraint rules such as discovered HA or DRS rules authored Turbonomic placement policies (sometimes called segments).

- **SCOPE NAME**
  For a given rule or constraint, the scope to which it was applied.

- **SOURCE**
  If this is a discovered constraint, the source shows the type of target that imposes this constraint. For example, for a DRS rule the source will be vCenter.

- **POTENTIAL PROVIDERS**
  For the given constraint, how many providers that constraint allows. To see a list of the potential providers, click the POTENTIAL PROVIDERS value.

To dig deeper into how these constraints affect your entity, click FIND MORE PLACEMENT OPTIONS. This puts you into a simulation mode that you can use to experiment with changing the effective constraints. For example, you might see that a cluster boundary is limiting your placement possibilities, and you would like the option to place the current VM on other clusters. Armed with this information, you could navigate to Policies and create a Merge Cluster policy.
In this mode you can enable and disable different combinations of constraints. As you do, the **POTENTIAL PROVIDERS** label updates to show how many providers are available to your entity. To see the resulting list of providers, click the **POTENTIAL PROVIDERS** label.
List of Entities

The list of entities is a quick way to drill down to details about your environment, so you can see specifics about resource consumption or state. For example, you can see the amount of capacity that has been assigned to a VM that is currently idle.

This list always updates to reflect the focus you have selected in the Supply Chain Navigator. When you select an entity type in the supply chain, the entities list updates to show the entities of that type for your current scope. For example, select Physical Machine to see a list of hosts in the current scope. For more information, see Navigating With the Supply Chain (page 107)
Pending Actions List

To perform Intelligent Workload Management, Turbonomic identifies actions you can take to avoid problems before they occur. You can perform these actions manually, direct Turbonomic to perform the actions on command, or direct Turbonomic to perform actions automatically as they arise.

The **Pending Actions** list shows the actions that Turbonomic currently recommends. You can select actions to execute, and you can expand action items to see more details.
Controlling List Display

For a long list of pending actions, it’s useful to sort or filter the list:

- **Filter the list**
  
  Filter the list by action type, action mode, and action category. For example, filter the list to only show resize actions that are manually executable, and that give efficiency improvements.

- **Search**
  
  Filter the list by names that match what you type in the Search field.

- **Sort**
  
  Sort the pending actions list by severity or by name of the action target, in ascending or descending order. Turbonomic determines action severity by the amount of improvement the affected entities will gain by executing the action. Action severities are:
  
  - Minor
  - Major
  - Critical
Showing Action Details

Expand an action item to see its details. The panel shows:

- A description of the recommended action
- Resource utilization for the affected entity
  For example, if the action is to move a VM, the details show resource utilization for that VM
- Resource utilization for the affected providers
  For example, for a VM move this shows utilization on the FROM and the TO host machines.
- Related risks or opportunities
  Risks and opportunities show the reasons for the recommended action.

**NOTE:**
The action item gives the names of the affected entities. You can click on these entity names to drill down and set the Home View scope to that specific entity. To return after drilling down to an entity in the action details, use the browser's **Back** button.
Navigating With the Supply Chain

After you have set the scope of your Turbonomic session, you can use the Supply Chain to change the focus of the main view, and see details about different types of entities within the current scope.

Drilling Down in a Scoped Session

When you set a scope to your Turbonomic session, the Home Page shows information about your environment, including:

- **Overview**
  Charts and lists to give you an overview of your environment for the current scope. This overview corresponds to all the entities in scope.

- **Details** - Charts that give you a more detailed look at your environment for the given scope

- **Policies** - Any policies that are defined for the entities in the current scope

- **Entity Lists** - Details about the entities in the current scope

- **Pending Actions** - Actions that are pending for any entities in the current scope

The Supply Chain shows the currently selected tier of entities. The change the focus of the scoped view, select different tiers in the Supply Chain. The Policies, Entities List, and Pending Actions tabs update to focus on the tier you selected.
Working With a Scoped View

These tabs show information for all the entities of that type that are in the current scope. For example, if you click the Host tier, these tabs update to show information about the hosts in your current scope.

To zoom in on a specific entity, you can click its name in the Entities List. This sets the scope to that specific entity. To return to the previous scope, use the browser's Back button.

Viewing Cluster Headroom

Cluster headroom shows you how much extra capacity your clusters have to host workloads. When you set the scope to a cluster, the Home Page then includes charts that show headroom for that cluster, as well as time to exhaustion of the cluster resources.

To view cluster headroom:

1. Navigate to the Search page.
2. Choose the Clusters category.
3. Select the cluster you want to view.
4. When the Home Page displays, scroll down to show the headroom charts.
   Make sure you have selected the Host tier in the supply chain navigator.

To calculate cluster capacity and headroom, Turbonomic runs nightly plans that take into account the conditions in your current environment. The plans use the Economic Scheduling Engine to identify the optimal workload distribution for your clusters. This can include moving your current VMs to other hosts within the given cluster, if such moves would result in a more desirable workload distribution. The result of the plan is a calculation of how many more VMs the cluster can support.
To calculate VM headroom, the plan simulates adding VMs to your cluster. The plan assumes a certain capacity for these VMs, based on a specific VM template. For this reason, the count of VMs given for the headroom is an approximation based on that VM template.

To specify the templates these plans use, you can configure the nightly plans for each cluster. For more information, see Configuring Nightly Plans (page 143)
Plans: Looking to the Future

Use the Plan Page to run simulations for what-if scenarios that explore possibilities such as:

• Migrating workloads from your enterprise datacenter out to the public cloud
• Changing hardware supply
• Impact of downsizing, or removing resources
• Projected infrastructure requirements
• Optimal workload distribution to meet historical peaks demands
• Optimal workload distribution across existing resources

How Plans Work

To run a plan scenario, Turbonomic creates a snapshot copy of your real-time market and modifies that snapshot according to the scenario. It then uses the Economic Scheduling Engine to perform analysis on that plan market. A
scenario can modify the snapshot market by changing the workload, adding or removing hardware resources, or eliminating constraints such as cluster boundaries or placement policies.

As it runs a plan, Turbonomic continuously analyzes the plan market until it arrives at the optimal conditions that market can achieve. When it reaches that point, the Economic Scheduling Engine cannot find better prices for any of the resources demanded by the workload — the plan stops running, and it displays the results as the plan’s desired state. The display includes the resulting workload distribution across hosts and datastores, as well as a list of actions the plan executed to achieve the desired result.

For example, assume a scenario that adds virtual machines to a cluster. To run the plan, Turbonomic takes a snapshot of the current market, and adds the VMs to the specified cluster. Turbonomic then runs analysis on the plan market, where each entity in the supply chain shops for the resources it needs, always looking for a better price — looking for those resources from less-utilized suppliers. This analysis continues until all the resources are provided at the best possible price.

The results might show that you can add more workload to your environment, even if you reduce compute resources by suspending physical machines. The recommended actions would then indicate which hosts you can take offline, and how to distribute your virtual machines among the remaining hosts.

**Migration Plans**

Turbonomic can run plans that calculate how to migrate workloads from one infrastructure to another. You can create:

- **On-prem migration plans**
  
  For example, assume you want to decommission one datacenter and move all its workload to a different datacenter. Does the target datacenter have enough physical resources to support the workload move? Where should that workload be placed? How can you calculate the effect such a change would have on your overall infrastructure?

  To calculate this information, create a plan that:

  - Limits the plan scope to two datacenters (or clusters) — the one you will decommission, and the one that will take on the extra workload
  - Removes all the hardware from the decommissioned datacenter
  - Calculates workload placement across datacenter (or cluster) boundaries
  - Does not provision new hardware to support the workload

- **Migration to the public cloud**

  Turbonomic includes a special plan to simulate migration of on-prem workload to the cloud. This plan focuses on optimizing your costs on the cloud by choosing the best templates (most adequate compute resources) and regions to host your workloads. The plan results give you:

  - Projected monthly and yearly costs
  - The actions to execute your migration
  - The optimal templates to use, combining efficient purchase of resources with assured application performance
  - And more...

  For more information about Migrate to Cloud plans, see Planning a Migration to the Cloud (page 129).
NOTE:
For workloads, plans calculate optimal placement and optimal resource allocation for the given workload. However, plans do not include idle workloads. This is because an idle VM shows no utilization, so the plan cannot determine optimal placement or what percentage of allocated resources that workload will require when it restarts.

For example, a Migrate to Cloud plan might discover that your active on-prem VMs are overprovisioned, and that you can use smaller, more economic templates when you move them to the cloud. However, the plan will not calculate migrations for any idle VMs in the plan scope.

Plan Management

The Plan Management page is your starting point for creating new plans, viewing saved plans, and deleting saved plans that you don't need anymore. To display this page, click the Plan button in the Turbonomic navigation bar.

• Create new plans

To create a new plan, click the CREATE PLAN button, then choose the type of plan to make. See Setting Up User Plan Scenarios (page 113).

• View saved plans

After you create and run a plan, Turbonomic saves it. You can return to the saved plan to review the results, or you can change its configuration and run it again.

• Delete saved plans

To delete a saved plan, turn on the plan's check box and then click the Delete button.
• Configure nightly plans

Turbonomic runs nightly plans to calculate headroom for the clusters in your on-prem environment. For each cluster plan, you can set which VM template to use in these calculations. See Configuring Nightly Plans (page 143)

NOTE:
By default, Turbonomic saves plans after you run them. However, when you update Turbonomic to a new major version or a point release, the data structures that plans use to display their results can change. To view reliable plan results after a Turbonomic update, you should always re-run your saved plans.

Setting Up User Plan Scenarios

A plan scenario specifies the overall configuration of a plan. Creating the plan scenario is how you set up a what-if scenario to see the results you would get if you changed your environment in some way.

After you run a plan, Turbonomic saves the results and the scenario. You can run the same plan again at any time. This runs the plan scenario against the market in its current state.

NOTE:
To set up Public Cloud planning scenarios, be sure to use the Migrate to Public Cloud or Optimize Cloud plan workflows. The other plan workflows give unreliable results when planning for environments that are managed by public cloud services.

Turbonomic provides workflows to create the following types of plans:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cloud Icon</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Cloud Icon" /></td>
<td>Migrate to Public Cloud</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Plans: Looking to the Future

| **Optimize Cloud** | VM resources, and migrating to the smallest templates that can assure performance of your applications without overprovisioning your cloud VMs. The plan shows the costs you would see in your cloud account for both sets of results. |
| **Add Workload** | For the scope of your public cloud environment that you want to examine, run a plan to see all the opportunities you have to reduce cost while assuring performance for your workloads. This includes suggestions to buy RLs, comparisons of template and storage usage, and a comparison of current to optimized cost. |
| **Workload Migration** | Adding workload increases the demand that you place on your environment's infrastructure. You can set up a plan to add new workload based on individual VMs or groups of VMs in your environment, or based on templates. |
| **Decommission Hosts** | Use this setup to see whether you have enough resources to move your workload from one provider group to another. For example, assume you want to decommission one datacenter, and move all its workload to a different datacenter. Does the target datacenter have enough physical resources to support the workload you plan to move? Where should that workload be placed? Use this plan to calculate the effect such a change would have on your overall infrastructure. |
| **Reconfigure Hardware** | If your environment includes underutilized hardware, you can use a plan to see whether you can decommission hosts or storage. |
| **Alleviate Pressure** | Choose hosts or storage that you want to replace with different hardware. For example, assume you are planning to upgrade the hosts in a cluster. How many do you need to deploy, and still assure performance of your applications? Create templates to represent the upgraded hosts and let the plan figure out how many hosts you really need. |

Choose a cluster that shows bottlenecks or other risks to performance, and check to see the minimal changes you can make by migrating some workloads to another cluster. The cluster that is showing risks is a *hot* cluster, and the cluster you will migrate to is a *cold* cluster.
Creating Plan Scenarios

The first step for running a plan is to create the scenario to specify how you want to change your environment. You can begin creating a scenario from different places in the user interface:

- From the Home Page:

  You can always click the Plan button to get started creating a scenario. Remember that you can use the Search page to set the current scope for the Home Page (see Scoping the Turbonomic Session (page 91)). When you start planning from the Home Page, the plan scenario automatically begins with the current Home Page scope.

- From the Plan Page:

  Navigate to the Plan Page, and then click Create Plan. These scenarios start with a global scope, but you can always edit the scope later.

After you click the Create button, choose the type of scenario you want. Turbonomic opens the appropriate wizard to guide you through creating the scenario.
Creating a Custom Scenario

When you create a custom scenario you skip the plan wizards and jump straight into setting up the plan parameters. You can name the plan, set the plan scope, change workload demand and the supply of resources, and specify other changes to the plan market.

To create a custom scenario, navigate to the Plan Page and click Create Plan. Then choose Custom to open a new custom scenario.

This opens the new Plan Scenario page.

The Plan's Change Summary

To the right of the Plan Scenario page you can see the Change Summary. For a new scenario, this summary says "No Changes Yet".
As you make changes to the plan scenario, those changes appear in the Change Summary. You can edit some changes in the list (for example, add more workloads), and you can delete entries from the summary to remove those changes from the scenario.

**Name the Plan**

Be sure to give a name that helps you recognize the purpose of this plan.

**Set the Plan’s Scope**

Click here...

Type here to filter the list.

To choose a group for your plan’s scope.

Select the group you want.
Setting plan scope is optional, but it usually helps to focus on a subset of your environment. For a very large environment, scoped plans run faster. Also, to run a plan that projects cycles into the future, you must set a scope.

After you set the scope, the user interface shows the group name and the supply chain for that scope.

The plan determines scope differently, depending on the type of entity you base it on:

- **Scope by VM**
  Limits the plan to the physical hosts that those VMs are able to run on. Likewise, the plan includes all the datastores that are available to the VMs in your scope.

- **Scope by Host**
  Limits the plan to those physical hosts. For datastores, Turbonomic identifies all the VMs that can run on the hosts in your scope, and identifies all the datastores that are available for those VMs.

- **Scope by Storage**
  The plan includes the VMs that can run on those datastores, and the physical hosts that those VMs are able to run on.

- **Scope by Provider Virtual Datacenter**
  Limits the plan to the VMs on the virtual datacenters — For those VMs, the scope operates similarly to scope by VM.

**Make Changes to Demand, Supply, and General Configuration**

To make specific changes to the plan, select different tiers in the plan's Supply Chain Navigator and make configuration changes associated with the given tier.

**General Plan Configuration**

The general settings for a plan have an effect on the overall planning environment.
To set up general configurations for your plan, click the General tier, and then make your settings.

**Change Current Utilization Level**

Setting baseline by increasing utilization by percent is a way to globally increase or decrease the workload for the full scope of your plan. Turbonomic uses the resulting utilization values as the baseline for the plan.

**Set Historical Baseline**

Use these settings to set up the baseline of utilization metrics for your plan:

- **Use current state data**
  
  This setting runs the plan against the current state of your environment. You can set up the plan to add or remove entities, or otherwise affect the plan calculations. But the utilization metrics will be based on the current state of the plan. If you run the same plan multiple times, each run begins with a fresh view of your inventory.

- **Use historical data**
  
  This loads the utilization statistics from a previous time period into the plan. Use this to run the plan against utilization that you experienced in the past. For example, assume a peak utilization period for the month before the winter holidays. During the holidays you want to plan to add new capacity that can better handle that peak. You would set the baseline to the utilization you saw during that pre-holiday peak.

  If you enable the **Use current inventory** option, the plan sets historical utilization metrics to the inventory that is current in your environment. Also, each run of the plan will start with a fresh view of your inventory.

**Ignore Constraints**

Globally disable all constraints including:

- Placement Policies that you may have configured in Turbonomic
- Placement policies Turbonomic has discovered (for example, DRS rules)
- Cluster boundaries

**NOTE:**

If you are adding hosts to a plan, and use host templates, then you must turn on **Ignore Constraints**.

**Adjust Desired State**

The desired state is a condition in your environment that assures performance for your workloads, while it utilizes your resources as efficiently as possible and you do not overprovision your infrastructure. Turbonomic uses default Desired State settings to drive its analysis. You should never change the settings for real-time analysis unless you are working directly with Technical support. However, you can change the settings in a plan to see what effect a more or less aggressive configuration would have in your environment.

You can think of the desired state as an n-dimensional sphere that encompasses the fittest conditions your environment can achieve. The multiple dimensions of this sphere are defined by the resource metrics in your environment. Metric dimensions include VMem, storage, CPU, etc. While the metrics on the entities in your environment can be any value,
the desired state, this n-dimensional sphere, is the subset of metric values that assures the best performance while achieving the most efficient utilization of resources that is possible.

The Desired State settings center this sphere on Performance (more infrastructure to supply the workload demand), or on Efficiency (less investment in infrastructure to supply the workload demand). The settings also adjust the diameter of the sphere to determine the range of deviation from the center that can encompass the desired state. If you specify a large diameter, Turbonomic will have more variation in the way it distributes workload across hosting devices.

For more information, see The Desired State (page 10).

Changing Workload

Changing the plan’s workload makes a change in demand for resources. The plan then calculates how the providers can best satisfy that demand, and the best placement of workloads on those providers.

To change the workload in your plan, click the Virtual Machine tier and then make your settings.

Add Workload

When you add workload, you add VMs to the plan market. To add workload, copy from the list of VMs in your inventory, or copy from a template. When choosing a VM, you can filter the list to show VMs with certain properties (name, number of CPUs, etc.) or by the host, storage, or network that the VM runs on. This makes it easier to sort through a long list of VMs.
**NOTE:**
Do not set up an Add Workload plan to add workloads based on public cloud templates. For example, do not choose to add 10 copies of an AWS template.

To set up an Add Workload plan, you should use Turbonomic templates that describe the allocations you want. Then to add workloads to the cloud, the plan can calculate which cloud template best suits that workload, depending on what templates are available for the given regions.

When you choose the VM or template you want to add, it appears as an entry in the Change Summary. Then you can set how many copies to add.

---

**Replace Workload**

Replacing workload is a way to change the properties of VMs in your plan market. When you replace workload, you select one or more VMs that you want to change, and then you select a template to use in their place. The list of changed VMs displays in the Change Summary. You can delete individual entries from the Change Summary if necessary.

**Remove Workload**

Removing workload frees up resources for other workloads to use. Choose the VMs you want to remove from the plan market, and they appear in the Change Summary list.

**Migrate Workload**

Migrating workload means that you move VMs from their current hosts to a different group of hosts. A typical case would be to select a group of VMs running on one cluster, and migrate them to a different cluster. Then you can run the plan to see whether the target cluster has sufficient resources to host the new VMs. You can use such a plan to see whether you can shut down a given cluster, or free up all of its resources.

When choosing VMs to migrate, you can filter the list to show VMs with certain properties (name, number of CPUs, etc.) or by the host, storage, or network that the VMs run on.

The VMs you choose to migrate appear in the Change Summary list.

---

**NOTE:**
Do not use this configuration to migrate workload from an on-prem environment onto the cloud. To perform cloud migrations, use the Migrate to Cloud plan (see Planning a Migration to the Cloud (page 129)). Also, do not use this configuration to migrate public cloud workload from one service or region to another. For this type of scenario, use the Optimize Cloud plan (see Planning Cloud Optimization (page 138)).
**Change Automation**

Use this to enable or disable automatic resize actions for the entities in the plan.

**Ignore Constraints**

Choose to ignore all constraints on the VMs in your environment, or choose a specific type of boundary to ignore. By default, VMs are constrained to the cluster, network group, or storage group that their hosts belong to. You can choose to ignore these boundaries.

For example, by default a plan does not consider moving VMs to physical hosts outside of the current cluster. If you disable the Cluster constraint for a the VMs in your plan, then the plan can evaluate the results of hosting those VMs on any other physical machine within the scope of your plan. If the best results come from moving that VM to a different cluster, then the plan will show that result.

**Change Placement Policies**

By default, the plan includes all the placement policies that apply to the plan scope. Also, these policies are in their real-time state (enabled or disabled).

You can use these settings to enable or disable existing policies, or you can create new policies to apply only to this plan scenario. For information about creating placement policies, see Placement Policies (page 225).

**Changing Host Providers**

![Diagram of Turbonomic GTM proving ownership and control over the applications and infrastructure to optimize performance](image-url)
Changing the hosts that provide compute resources in your plan makes a change in supply for workloads. The plan then calculates how the providers can best satisfy workload demand, and also the best placement of workloads on those providers.

To change the hosts in your plan, click the Host tier and then make your settings.

**Add Hosts**

When you add hosts, you increase the compute resources for the plan. To add hosts, copy from the list of hosts in your inventory, copy a group of hosts, or copy from a template.

**NOTE:**

When you add hosts by copying from a template, you must then configure the plan to ignore constraints. Go to the General settings and turn on the *Ignore Constraints* setting (see *Ignore Constraints (page 119)*).

**Replace Hosts**

Replacing hosts is a way to plan for a hardware upgrade. For example, if you replace your hosts with a more powerful template, the plan might show that you can use fewer hosts, and it will show the best placement for workloads on those hosts.

You begin by selecting the hosts you want to replace, and when you click **REPLACE** you can then choose a template that will replace them. Note that you can only choose a single template for each set of hosts you want to have replaced. You can configure different replacements in the same plan, if you want to use more than one template.

**Remove Workload**

Removing hosts means you have fewer compute resources for your workloads. If you think you have overprovisioned your environment, you can run a plan to see whether fewer hosts can still support the same workload.

**Change Automation**

For hosts, you can enable or disable Provision and Suspend actions. For example, if you want to plan for more workload, but know that you don't want to add more hardware, use this setting to disable Provision of hosts for your plan.

**Change Placement Policies**

By default, the plan includes all the placement policies that apply to the plan scope. Also, these policies are in their real-time state (enabled or disabled).

You can use these settings to enable or disable existing policies, or you can create new policies to apply only to this plan scenario. For information about creating placement policies, see *Placement Policies (page 225)*.

**Change Max Utilization Level**

Max Host utilization levels specify the percentage of the physical resource that you want to make available in the given plan. By default, hosts have utilization set to 100%. For a given plan, you can set the utilization to a lower value.
For example, assume you want to simulate High Availability of 25% for some hosts in the plan. In that case, you can select these hosts and set their utilization levels to 75%.

**Changing Storage Providers**

Changing the storage resources in your plan makes a change in supply for workloads. The plan then calculates how the providers can best satisfy workload demand, and also the best placement of workloads on those providers.

To change the storage in your plan, click the Storage tier and then make your settings.

**Add Storage**

When you add storage, you increase the storage resources for the plan. To add storage, copy from the list of datastores in your inventory, copy a group of stores, or copy from a template.

**Replace Storage**

Replacing storage is a way to plan for a hardware upgrade. For example, if you replace datastores with a more powerful template, the plan might show that you can use fewer datastores, and it will show the best placement for workloads on that storage.

You begin by selecting the storage you want to replace, and when you click REPLACE you can then choose a template for the replacement. Note that you can only choose a single template for each set of datastores you want to have replaced. You can configure different replacements in the same plan, if you want to use more than one template.
Remove Storage

Removing hosts means you have fewer storage resources for your workloads. If you think you have overprovisioned your environment, you can run a plan to see whether less storage can still support the same workload.

Change Automation

For hosts, you can enable or disable Provision and Suspend actions. For example, if you want to plan for more workload, but know that you don't want to add more hardware, use this setting to disable Provision of storage for your plan.

Change Placement Policies

By default, the plan includes all the placement policies that apply to the plan scope. Also, these policies are in their real-time state (enabled or disabled).

You can use these settings to enable or disable existing policies, or you can create new policies to apply only to this plan scenario. For information about creating placement policies, see Placement Policies (page 225).

Change Max Utilization Level

Max Storage utilization levels specify the percentage of the physical resource that you want to make available in the given plan. By default, storage has utilization set to 100%. For a given plan, you can set the utilization to a lower value.

For example, assume you have one data store that you want to share evenly for two clusters of VMs. Also assume that you are creating a plan for one of those clusters. In that case, you can set the datastores to 50% utilization. This saves storage resources for the other cluster that will use this storage.
Planning to Alleviate Pressure on a Cluster

Use the Alleviate Pressure plan to find out how to migrate workloads from a stressed or hot cluster over to a cluster with more headroom. This plan shows the minimal changes you need to make to reduce risks on the hot cluster.

Run these plans to see how to move your on-prem workload onto the public cloud. The plan results:

- Show the actions to migrate workloads from the hot cluster to the cold one
- Compare the current state of your clusters to the optimized state
- Show resulting headroom for both the hot and the cold clusters
- Show trends of workload-to-inventory over time for both clusters

Alleviate Pressure plans make use of the headroom in your clusters. Headroom is the number of VMs the cluster can support, for CPU, Memory and Storage.

To calculate cluster capacity and headroom, Turbonomic runs nightly plans that take into account the conditions in your current environment. The plans use the Economic Scheduling Engine to identify the optimal workload distribution for your clusters. This can include moving your current VMs to other hosts within the given cluster, if such moves would result in a more desirable workload distribution. The result of the plan is a calculation of how many more VMs the cluster can support.

To calculate VM headroom, the plan simulates adding VMs to your cluster. The plan assumes a certain capacity for these VMs, based on a specific VM template. For this reason, the count of VMs given for the headroom is an approximation based on that VM template.

To specify the templates these plans use, you can configure the nightly plans for each cluster. For more information, see Configuring Nightly Plans (page 143)
NOTE:
To execute, this plan must ignore certain constraints. The plan ignores cluster constraints to allow migrating workloads from the hot cluster to the cold one. It also ignores network constraints, imported DRS policies, and any Turbonomic that would ordinarily be in effect.

Configuring an Alleviate Pressure Plan

The first step for running a plan is to create the scenario to specify how you want to change your environment. You can begin creating a scenario from different places in the user interface:

• From the Home Page:

You can always click the Plan button to get started creating a scenario. Remember that you can use the Search page to set the current scope for the Home Page (see Scoping the Turbonomic Session (page 91)). When you start planning from the Home Page, the plan scenario automatically begins with the current Home Page scope.

• From the Plan Page:

Navigate to the Plan Page, and then click Create Plan. These scenarios start with a global scope, but you can always edit the scope later.

In the list of plan wizards, choose Alleviate Pressure.

The wizard first gives you a list for you to choose the hot cluster. This is the cluster that shows risks to performance. The list sorts with the most critical clusters first, and it includes the calculated headroom for CPU, Memory, and Storage in each cluster.

After you select the hot cluster, click Next and choose the cold cluster.
After you have chosen the hot and cold clusters, click Run. Turbonomic then executes the plan.

Viewing Alleviate Pressure Results

After the plan runs, you can view the results to see how the migration of workloads off of your hot cluster affects your environment.

The Cloud results include the following charts:

- **Recommended Actions**
  
  You can see a list of actions to reduce the pressure on the hot cluster. It's typical to see actions to move workloads from the hot cluster over to the cold cluster. If some VMs are overprovisioned, you might see actions to reduce the capacity for those workloads.

- **Optimized Improvements**
  
  This chart compares the current state of the hot cluster to its state after executing the plan actions. It displays the resource utilization of the cluster's hosts both before and after the plan.

- **Headroom and Density for the Hot Cluster**
  
  Put together, these charts show the headroom for the hot cluster and they show the counts of VMs, Hosts, and Storage over time.

- **Headroom and Density for the Cold Cluster**
Planning a Migration to the Cloud

Turbonomic includes a special plan to simulate migration of on-prem workload to the cloud, or migration of workloads from one cloud to another. This plan focuses on optimizing your costs on the cloud by choosing the best templates (most adequate compute resources) and regions to host your workloads. If analysis discovers on-prem workloads that are good candidates for Reserved Instances (RIs), then it recommends migrating to those templates, and can even recommend purchasing more RI capacity.

Run the Migrate to Cloud plan to see how to move your workload onto the public cloud. The plan results:

- Give you projected costs over time.
- Show the actions to execute your migration.
- Identify the optimal templates to use, combining efficient purchase of resources with assured application performance.
- Choose the best regions to run your workload.
- Show the cost difference between using current workload allocations and using the optimized allocations that Turbonomic has calculated. Note that the cost calculations can include price adjustments (increase or decrease by percentage) and Rate Cards (custom price lists for Azure providers).
- Identify candidates for Reserved Instance (RI) pricing, and show the cost benefits you can see by running those workloads as RI instances.
- If you need more RI capacity, the results identify the RIs you should purchase, and in which region.

**NOTE:**
Migration to Cloud plans rely on controlled policies to calculate and execute the workload migration. For this reason, the plan ignores any workload placement policies you might have configured that affect any part of the plan’s scope.

**Migrating to Azure CSPs**

For Azure environments, migration plans use the published Microsoft rates by default, to calculate the least expensive placement for the migrated workloads. However, you might want to plan a migration to a specific Cloud Solution
Provider (CSP), and the CSP might offer its own price list for Azure services. In that case, the migration plan should calculate and show the pricing that the specific CSP offers.

You can configure these price lists as Rate Cards in Turbonomic, and assign them to specific CSP subscriptions (see Azure Rate Cards (page 212)). As you configure a Migrate to Cloud plan, you can set which Rate Card to use when calculating placement and cost (see "Pricing" in Configuring a Migrate to Cloud Plan (page 130)).

**NOTE:**
You can use the Migrate to Cloud plan to migrate workloads from an on-prem environment to a cloud environment, and you can use them to migrate from one cloud provider to another. However, you cannot use them to migrate to different placement within the same cloud provider. For example, do not use Migrate to Cloud to move workloads from one Azure subscription to another, as a way to test the effect of pricing from a different Rate Card. The results from such a plan would not be reliable.

### Configuring a Migrate to Cloud Plan

To configure a Migrate to Cloud plan, you choose the set of workloads you want to migrate, and then you identify the cloud service provider, region, or group you want them to migrate to. You can configure a Migrate to Cloud plan to simulate:

- **Migrating workloads from an on-prem datacenter to a cloud account**
  Choose to migrate VMs that are managed by on-prem hypervisors. Choose a cloud provider, cloud region, or group on the cloud as the destination.

- **Migrating workloads on the cloud from one region to another**
  Choose to migrate cloud VMs on a given region, and choose a different region as the destination.

- **Migrating workloads on the cloud from one service provider to another**
  Choose to migrate cloud VMs on one service provider, and choose a different service provider as the destination.

Be aware that you can migrate workloads from AWS service providers to Azure service providers. AWS includes EC2 Spot Instances that offer steep discounts — A plan that migrates from AWS to Azure will not migrate workloads that run on spot instances.

**NOTE:**
Do not use Migrate to Cloud plans to freely migrate your cloud workloads to any region within their current cloud provider. For example, do not choose to migrate AWS workloads, and then choose the AWS provider as the destination. If you want to simulate the best placement for your AWS workloads within the AWS environment, run the Optimize Cloud plan (see Planning Cloud Optimization (page 138)).

The Migrate to Cloud plan calculates the costs for your workloads, according to the billing you have negotiated with your cloud service provider. These costs include compute costs, service costs (for example, IP services), and license costs. The plan also calculates RI purchases for workloads that can benefit from such pricing. You should consider the following points:

- **RI Purchase Profile**
  A Migrate to Cloud plan assumes the most economical profile to determine RI costs for any migrated workloads that can use RI capacity. The purchased RIs will be Standard, 3-year, All Upfront purchases.
• OS Configuration

On the cloud, VM templates usually include an OS platform to run processes on the VM. As you migrate workloads to the cloud, you can specify the OS you prefer to run. You can keep the same OS that the original workload has, or you can choose to map the workload to a different OS. For example, you can choose to migrate all RHEL workloads to VMs that run the service provider’s deployment of open source Linux. For information, see OS Migration Profile (page 210), or see the steps below to override the global OS profile for this plan.

• Pricing

By default, a migration plan places the migrated workload on the most economical cloud, considering the provider, region, and most efficient workload template. Turbonomic includes to ways that you can affect the pricing that it calculates for workloads and services on the cloud:

◦ Rate Cards — For migrations to Azure environments, you can choose a Rate Card that assigns custom pricing from a Cloud Solution Provider (CSP) to a specific Azure subscription. This is a way to simulate migration to a specific Azure subscription that uses its own price list. For more information, see Azure Rate Cards (page 212).

◦ Price Adjustments — For migrations to AWS or Azure environments, you can choose a Price Adjustment that has been defined for the target Billing Family or subscription. With Price Adjustments, you can specify negotiated increases or discounts to the costs of given templates and services, and reflect those adjustments in the plan results. For more information, see Price Adjustments (page 215).

Setting Up the Plan

The first step for running a plan is to create the scenario to specify how you want to change your environment. You can begin creating a scenario from different places in the user interface:

• From the Home Page:

You can always click the Plan button to get started creating a scenario. Remember that you can use the Search page to set the current scope for the Home Page (see Scoping the Turbonomic Session (page 91)). When you start planning from the Home Page, the plan scenario automatically begins with the current Home Page scope.

• From the Plan Page:

Navigate to the Plan Page, and then click Create Plan. These scenarios start with a global scope, but you can always edit the scope later.

Clicking to create a plan opens the Select Plan Type list of plan wizards. In this list, choose Migrate to Public Cloud and use the wizard to configure the plan:

1. Select the workloads to migrate.

The wizard first gives you a list of VMs to migrate. You can choose from groups or individual VMs. Note that you can choose to migrate on-prem workloads to the cloud, or you can choose cloud workloads to migrate them to a different region or cloud service provider.
After you choose the workloads to migrate, click **Next**.

2. Choose the destination for this migration.

   In the fly-out that appears, set up the migration destination. You can choose from:

   - **Providers**
     
     Choose from a list of providers. Each public cloud target is an account on a given public cloud provider. Turbonomic shows all of the providers that host your current public cloud accounts. Choose to migrate to one of these providers, or to have the plan choose from all of the providers.

     If you are migrating cloud workloads, then they are already on a provider. For the migration destination, you should not choose the same provider that already hosts the workloads.

   - **Regions**
     
     Turbonomic discovers all the regions that you can access from your target cloud accounts. You can choose one region to restrict plan placement decisions.

   - **Groups**
Choose from a list of groups of VMs that are hosted on the public cloud. The list shows datacenter groups (Regions). This will restrict the plan to place your migrated workloads into that group.

3. Optionally, specify an OS Profile for this migration.

You can set a default OS Profile in the Budgets and Costs settings page (see OS Migration Profile (page 210)). To override the default OS profile for this migration plan, click Advanced Configuration at the bottom of the fly-out, display the OS CONFIGURATION tab, and make the settings you want.

The OS Migration Profile determines how Turbonomic will map the OS of each workload as it places that workload on the cloud destination. This includes how to choose VM templates that provide the OS you want, and whether to include the license cost in the Migrate to Cloud plan results. To configure an OS Migration Profile, choose from:

- **Match source OS to target OS**
  
  As you migrate workloads to the cloud, keep the same OS. As Turbonomic calculates placement for the migrated workloads, it will only use templates that provide the same OS that the workload already has. This is important if your workloads host applications that depend on a specific OS.

- **BYOL (Bring your own license)**
  
  The same as **Match source OS to target OS**, except the plan does not include OS licensing costs in any of the cost calculations for on-cloud placement.

- **Custom OS**
  
  For each of the listed OS types, map the migrated VM to the OS you choose. The OS types are:
  
  - Linux – Any open source distribution of Linux. For the migration, Turbonomic will choose templates that provide the Linux platform that the cloud service provider delivers as a free platform. Note that this is always BYOL, because it assumes a free OS license.
  
  - RHEL – Red Hat Enterprise Linux.
Plans: Looking to the Future

- SLES – SUSE Linux Enterprise Server.
- Windows – Microsoft Windows.

For each mapping, enable or disable BYOL (Bring Your Own License). When you enable this, Turbonomic assumes that you are paying for the OS license, and will not include the license cost in the plan results. If you do not enable BYOL, then Turbonomic gets the license cost from the service provider and includes that cost in the plan results.

4. Optionally, specify custom Pricing for this migration.

If you have set up Rate Cards or Price Adjustments in Turbonomic, then you can use these to affect the pricing the plan uses to calculate placement and to show costs in the plan results. For more information, see Azure Rate Cards (page 212) and Price Adjustments (page 215).

To specify custom pricing for this migration plan, display the PRICING tab in the Advanced Configuration fly-out, and choose the AWS Billing Family or Azure subscription that includes the pricing you want.

NOTE:
When you set up the Migrate to Cloud plan, you choose the destination for the migration. This can be:
- One or all of the cloud providers (AWS or Azure)
- One region
- One group defined in a cloud environment

The PRICING list shows all the AWS Billing Families and Azure subscriptions that Turbonomic has discovered. The choice you make for PRICING must match the provider type that you chose for the migration destination.

For example, assume you chose an AWS region as the migration destination. In that case, you cannot use PRICING from an Azure subscription. You must use an AWS billing family. Likewise, if you chose an Azure destination, then you must choose an Azure subscription to set the PRICING.
5. Execute the plan.

After you have set up the VMs to migrate, and you have set up the destination, click **MIGRATE TO CLOUD**. Turbonomic then executes the plan.

**Viewing Migrate to Cloud Results**

After the plan runs, you can view the results to see how the migration affects your environment. The plan gives hybrid results, divided into a **Cloud** section and an **On-Prem** section. This gives you insight into the complete effect of your migration – both the placement and costs on the cloud, and the resulting savings for your on-prem environment.

**Viewing Cloud Results**

ilitary  Cloud

The Cloud section focuses on your cloud compute costs. As Turbonomic runs the plan, it inspects the VMs to determine the most efficient resource allocations they can have while still assuring performance of the applications they host. In many cases the plan discovers VMs that are over-provisioned. If you were to migrate such VMs to templates that match their current allocations, then you would spend more than necessary to host these VMs on the cloud. The Cloud results show VM compute costs based on the templates that the plan uses to deploy VMs.

**NOTE:**

For AWS clouds, Turbonomic can get the information it needs to display license costs for database instances. For Azure clouds, Turbonomic does not display database license costs because Azure does not make that information available.

The Cloud results include the following charts:

- **Cloud Cost Comparison**

  This table shows compute costs for VMs on the cloud. You can see changes in cost that result from the migration (compute cost from adding workloads), and changes from resizing existing workloads and moving them to less expensive regions. To provide detail, the table shows how many VMs the plan found that need to be scaled up or down. If it finds undersized VMs, then costs should go up, and for oversized VMs the costs should go down.

  The plan also identifies workloads that can run as Reserved Instances (RIs).

  To identify RI candidates, Turbonomic considers the history of the workload (by default, the last 21 days), and it looks for:

  - **Workload Activity**

    If the workload shows VCPU utilization that is greater than zero, then Turbonomic considers it an active workload.

  - **Workload Stability**

    If there have been no start, stop, or resize actions for the VM over the historic period, then Turbonomic considers it stable.

  - **RI Inventory (AWS only)**

    For AWS environments, Turbonomic compares the RI candidates to your current inventory of RI resources, plus your desired RI coverage. If the inventory can support the workload, then Turbonomic considers it an AWS
RI candidate. If the inventory cannot support the workload, or if supporting it would exceed your desired RI coverage, then Turbonomic can recommend purchasing more RI capacity.

The table then compares costs that you would see after migration, in the following ways:

- Allocation Plan
  This column shows compute and storage costs for VMs using templates that support the current on-prem resource allocations.

- Consumption Plan
  This column shows compute cost of VMs after the plan has optimized the VM resource allocations for those workloads. This gives placement decisions that use the most efficient compute allocations based on templates that are available in the cloud region. As a result, the compute costs are usually lower, and the plan shows the savings you can take advantage of while still assuring application performance on your migrated VMs.

- Difference and %
  These columns summarize the difference between the Allocation and Consumption results. For costs, the percentage column indicates the percentage of workloads that are affected by the Consumption cost calculations.

The table can list the following changes and costs:

- Workloads with performance risks
  Count of VMs, databases, or database servers in this scope that can put QoS at risk.

- Workloads with efficiency opportunities
  Count of VMs, databases, or database servers in this scope that are underutilized, or that can improve their costs by using RIs.

- Workloads out of compliance
  Count of VMs, databases, or database servers in this scope that violate current configuration requirements or defined policies.

- On-Demand Compute Cost
  The on-demand cost of the migrated VMs, without scaling the workloads (Allocation Plan) or after scaling workloads (Consumption Plan). These costs include OS licenses when appropriate. Plan results reflect only the new costs incurred after the migration.

- Reserved Compute Cost
  For RIs the plan purchases to support this migration, the up-front payment and monthly fees amortized into monthly cost over the term of the reservation. This cost accrues whether the VMs use the RI resources or not.

- On-Demand Database Cost
  The cost of database services in this scope that are covered by on-demand pricing.

- Storage Cost
  The cost of storage for this scope. For workload scope, the cost of volumes attached to the workloads. For storage scope, the cost of all attached and unattached volumes in this scope.

- Total Cost
The totals of the different costs in this scope.

- **Cloud Template Summary by Type**
  This chart shows the types of templates the plan recommends for the migration, including how many of each it uses, plus the costs for each.
  Click **Show changes** to display a table of template details for each workload in the plan. This maps the cloud templates to the on-prem VMs, and for the Consumption Plan it shows whether Turbonomic recommends an RI for that VM.

- **Volume Tier Breakdown**
  This chart shows the distribution of storage that supports your workloads. You can see how many workloads are supported by each storage tier. For a detailed breakdown, click **Show changes** at the bottom of the chart. The details show you:
  - Disk ID
  - Storage name
  - Size
  - Linked VMs
  - Tier name
  - Monthly Cost

- **Recommended RI Purchases**
  This chart gives a breakdown of the recommended RIs you should purchase to support the migration with the least cost. For details, click **Show all** at the bottom of the chart. Some of the details it shows are:
  - Reserved Instances: The RIs to purchase
  - Platform: The OS for that RI
  - Related VM: Which VM Turbonomic recommends the RI for
  - Location: The region in your cloud account for this RI
  - RI Cost: The estimated cost for this RI, assuming a 3-year purchase plan

**Viewing On-Prem Results**

- **On-Prem**
  The On-Prem section focuses on the physical resources this migration would free in your on-prem datacenter. It includes the following charts:
  - **Optimized Improvements**
    This chart compares your on-prem environment, showing a before/after snapshot. The bar charts show resource utilization by the workloads in the on-prem environment. If you migrate all of the on-prem workloads to the cloud, the right-hand chart will have no data – all the workloads have been migrated so there is no workload to report on.
  - **Resource Summary by Count**
This chart shows the current status of your environment side-by-side with the status you would achieve after executing the migration. The chart shows the utilization index for the VMs in your environment. The higher this index is for a VM, the more its resources are utilized.

Planning Cloud Optimization

Run the Optimize Cloud plan to see how you can maximize savings while still assuring performance for your applications and workloads. This plan identifies ways to optimizing your costs by choosing the best templates (most adequate compute resources), regions, accounts, or resource groups to host your workloads. The plan also identifies workloads that can change over to RI pricing plans, and it compares your current costs to the costs you would get after executing the plan recommendations. The plan results:

- Compare current to optimized costs, including on-demand compute, reserved compute, on-demand database, and storage costs
- Compare current and optimized breakdowns of templates used
- Compare breakdowns of storage tiers in use
- Project the RI coverage (how many workloads use RI) and utilization (percentage of RIs that are active)
- Identify candidates for Reserved Instance (RI) pricing, and show the cost benefits you can see by running those workloads on templates that are reserved on your public cloud provider.

Configuring an Optimize Cloud Plan

The first step for running a plan is to create the scenario to specify how you want to change your environment. You can begin creating a scenario from different places in the user interface:

- From the Home Page:
You can always click the Plan button to get started creating a scenario. Remember that you can use the Search page to set the current scope for the Home Page (see Scoping the Turbonomic Session (page 91)). When you start planning from the Home Page, the plan scenario automatically begins with the current Home Page scope.

- From the Plan Page:

Navigate to the Plan Page, and then click Create Plan. These scenarios start with a global scope, but you can always edit the scope later.

In the list of plan wizards, choose Optimize Cloud.

1. **Select the scope for your plan.**

   The wizard first prompts you to set the scope of your plan. You can scope by cloud provider, region, account, Azure resource group, or billing family.
   - **Provider** — See how you can optimize all your AWS or Azure workloads.
   - **Region** — Focus the plan on a provider's region.
   - **Account** — Choose an AWS account or Azure subscription for the plan's scope. If you choose an Account for the scope, then the plan will not calculate RI Buy actions. To optimize RI purchases for a limited scope, choose a Billing Family.
   - **Azure Resource Group** — Turbonomic discovers resource groups. You can select one or more resource groups for the plan scope.
   - **Billing Family** — Include RI purchases in the planning for a scope that is limited a single billing family. The plan calculates RI purchases through the billing family's master account.

2. **Optionally, click Advanced Configuration** at the bottom of the Select Scope fly-out to change the plan profile and RI purchase profile.
In the **PLAN PROFILE** tab, you can choose:

- **Purchase RI and Optimize Workloads**
  Purchase Reserved Instances and also resize VM workloads to move to the desired state.

- **Only Optimize Workloads**
  Resize VM workloads to move to the desired state. No RI purchases are considered.

- **Only Purchase RI**
  Purchase Reserved Instances based on current VM allocation and consumption to move to the desired state.

In the **RI PURCHASE PROFILE** tab, you can change RI Purchase Profile settings that match the cloud settings you have set up for real-time analysis. For more information about RI Purchase, see [RI Purchase Profile](page 209).

- **TYPE**
  For AWS environments, these correspond to the RI offering class. TYPE can be one of **Standard** or **Convertible**. Choose the type that corresponds to the RI types that you typically use in your environment.

- **TERM**
  The payment terms you contract for your RIs. TERM can be one of **1 Year** or **3 Year**. Typically, longer term payment plans cost less per year.

- **PAYMENT**
  The payment option that you prefer for your RIs:
  - All Upfront – You make full payment at the start of the RI term.
  - Partial Upfront – You make a portion of the payment at the start of the term, with the remain cost paid at an hourly rate.
• No Upfront – You pay for the RIs at an hourly rate, for the duration of the term.

• PURCHASE DATE

This date sets when you intend to execute the optimizations that the plan calculates for you. That date impacts the RIs that you should purchase.

Note that reservations can expire at a given date. If you intend to execute the plan recommendations at a later date, then some reservations currently available to the plan might expire by that time. To allow for this situation, set a purchase date and then the plan will not recommend any RIs that expire before that date.

3. After you have made the settings, click OPTIMIZE to run the plan.

Viewing Optimize Cloud Results

After the plan runs, you can view the results to see how you can maximize savings or make other improvements to your cloud environment. The plan results show VM compute costs based on the templates it deploys VMs to, and based on the RI pricing that is available for those templates.

NOTE:

For AWS clouds, Turbonomic can get the information it needs to display license costs for database instances. For Azure clouds, Turbonomic does not display database license costs because Azure does not make that information available.

The plan results include the following charts:

• Cloud Cost Comparison

This chart shows compute costs for your workloads in Current and Optimized columns. You can see changes in cost that result from resizing existing workloads and moving them to less expensive regions. To provide detail, the chart shows how many VMs the plan found that need to be resized. If it finds undersized VMs, then costs should go up, and for oversized VMs the costs should go down.

Turbonomic can recommend that you purchase RI capacity to reduce costs for your current workload. The analysis looks at workload history to identify RI candidates. This considers the count of workloads in a family, plus their hours of active-state condition, to arrive at the RI capacity you should purchase.

The table can list the following changes and costs:

◦ Workloads with performance risks
  Count of VMs, databases, or database servers in this scope that can put QoS at risk.

◦ Workloads with efficiency opportunities
  Count of VMs, databases, or database servers in this scope that are underutilized, or that can improve their costs by using RIs.

◦ Workloads out of compliance
  Count of VMs, databases, or database servers in this scope that violate current configuration requirements or defined policies.

◦ On-Demand Compute Cost
  On-demand cost of VMs before and after actions, including OS licenses when appropriate. After-action costs are the result of scaling actions and changes in RI coverage. VMs will scale to pending RI purchase actions to maximize savings.
- **Reserved Compute Cost**
  For this scope of VMs, the monthly fees and up-front payment for RI resources the given VMs can use, amortized into monthly cost over the term of the reservation. This cost accrues whether the VMs use the RI resources or not.

- **On-Demand Database Cost**
  The cost of database services in this scope that are covered by on-demand pricing.

- **Storage Cost**
  The cost of storage for this scope. For workload scope, the cost of volumes attached to the workloads. For storage scope, the cost of all attached and unattached volumes in this scope.

- **Total Cost**
  The totals of the different costs in this scope.

- **Cloud Template Summary by Type**
  This chart shows the types of templates you currently use, compared to the templates the plan recommends, including how many of each type, plus the costs for each. To see a detailed breakdown of the template costs, click **SHOW CHANGES** at the bottom of the chart.

- **Volume Tier Breakdown**
  This chart shows the distribution of storage that supports your workloads. You can see how many workloads are supported by each storage tier. For a detailed breakdown, click **SHOW CHANGES** at the bottom of the chart. The details show you:
  - **Disk ID**
  - **Storage name**
  - **Size**
  - **Linked VMs**
  - **Monthly cost per tier**

- **RI Coverage**
  See how many workloads in your cloud environment are running as Reserved Instances.

- **RI Utilization**
  See how much of your purchased Reserved Instance inventory is utilized.

- **RI Inventory**
  This chart shows the RI workloads that Turbonomic discovers and lists them by templates. For a tabular listing, click **Show All** at the bottom of the chart. In the tabular listing, you can see if an RI expired before the specified purchase date. The word "Expired" appears in the Expiration Date column.

- **Recommended RI Purchases**
  This chart shows the RIs the plan recommends. To see the details, click **SHOW ALL** at the bottom of the chart.
Configuring Nightly Plans

Turbonomic runs nightly plans to calculate headroom for the clusters in your on-prem environment. For each cluster plan, you can set which VM template to use in these calculations.

For information about viewing cluster headroom, see Viewing Cluster Headroom (page 108).

To calculate cluster capacity and headroom, Turbonomic runs nightly plans that take into account the conditions in your current environment. The plans use the Economic Scheduling Engine to identify the optimal workload distribution for your clusters. This can include moving your current VMs to other hosts within the given cluster, if such moves would result in a more desirable workload distribution. The result of the plan is a calculation of how many more VMs the cluster can support.

To calculate VM headroom, the plan simulates adding VMs to your cluster. The plan assumes a certain capacity for these VMs, based on a specific VM template. For this reason, the count of VMs given for the headroom is an approximation based on that VM template.

To set templates to use for the nightly plans:

1. Display the Plan page.
2. Display the configuration page.
   In the top-left of the Plan Management page, click NIGHTLY PLAN CONFIGURATION. This displays a list of all the nightly plans. Turbonomic creates a nightly plan for each cluster.
3. Click the plan that you want to configure.
   A fly-out appears that lists all the available templates.

4. Select the template you want for this plan.
   Choose the template and click **Select**.
Place: Reserve and Deploy Workload

From the Place Page, Turbonomic uses its intelligent workload management to calculate optimal placement for workloads and then actually deploy them to your on-prem or cloud environment.

To deploy workloads from this page, you will:

- Define the workload to deploy
  This includes choosing a VM template, setting how many instances to deploy, and specifying any placement constraints.
- Find the optimal placement
  Turbonomic runs a plan to determine the best placement for the workload you defined.
- Schedule deployment or create a reservation
  Either deploy the workload directly, or reserve the resources to deploy the workload at a later time.

About Templates for Workload Placement

To specify the workload to deploy, you choose a VM template and then specify how many instances you want to deploy. The template you choose must include a specification for one or more VM images. A VM image identifies the actual deployment package:

- To deploy on-prem, a path to the physical files (for example an OVA)
- For cloud deployments, the cloud provider's named VM image (for AWS, the AMI)

If the template definition includes multiple images, then as it places the workload Turbonomic will choose the image that corresponds with the given cloud region or on-prem datacenter it is deploying to. For more information about templates, see Templates: Resource Allocations for New Entities (page 280).

About Placement Constraints

When you define the workload to deploy, you specify a template to deploy and any constraints that you want Turbonomic to respect.
NOTE:
The user interface does not force you to specify placement constraints. However, these constraints are how you ensure that the template you have chosen is viable in the given locations that Turbonomic will choose. For example, without placement constraints Turbonomic could choose to place a VM on a cluster that cannot access the template.

In OpenStack environments, when you set up reservations to deploy workloads via OpenStack templates you must constrain the deployment to the OpenStack datacenter. To deploy an OpenStack template, turn on the **Limit initial placement to locations you specify** constraint, and manually choose the datacenter or datacenters that support the OpenStack template.

The constraints you can choose include:

- **Limit initial placement to the template’s image locations**
  For cloud deployment, the template you use specifies one or more VM images that are offered by the cloud providers. Each cloud region makes different images available – if you enable this constraint, then Turbonomic will only place the workload on the image’s region.

- **Limit initial placement to locations you specify**
  To limit placement, you can manually specify the cloud regions or on-prem datacenters, the virtual datacenters, or the clusters that Turbonomic can deploy this workload to.

- **Limit placement with placement policy**
  Turbonomic discovers placement policies that are defined in your environment, and you can also create your own. With this setting, you can specify which placement policies to respect. For more information about these policies, see [Placement Policies](#page-224).

- **Limit placement to networks**
  Turbonomic discovers the different networks in your environment. Use this constraint to limit workload placement to the networks you choose.

**Displaying the Workload Placement Page**

To see the reservations that are currently active and to create new reservations, click the **PLACE** button.
Setting Up a Deployment

To set up a deployment or a reservation:

1. Choose the workload you want.

On the Workload Placement Page, click **FIND OPTIMAL PLACEMENT**. Turbonomic displays a list of templates. Choose the template you want, and click **SELECT**.

2. Define the workload you want to deploy, and find its placement.

Set the number of workloads you want to deploy. Remember that the more workloads you set up in a reservation, the more resources that Turbonomic will set aside.

In addition to choosing your workload, you can also set up constraints to limit how Turbonomic calculates the deployment.

3. When you've finished making the settings, click **FIND PLACEMENT**.

Turbonomic runs a plan to calculate the placement for the workloads you specified. If it succeeds, it then shows the proposed placement. You can see details including:

- For cloud placement, the cloud regions and storage tiers that will host the workloads.
- For on-prem, the physical machine and storage that will host the workloads.

4. Create a reservation or schedule a deployment.

Provide a name for the reservation or deployment. For a reservation, you provide the reservation name – Turbonomic prepends that name to all the VMs it deploys. For a scheduled deployment, you provide names of the individual VMs.

For either a reservation or a scheduled deployment, you provide dates:

- For a reservation, set the start and end date. Turbonomic reserves the resources for that time, and deploys the workload by the end date.
- For a scheduled deployment, you specify the date when you want Turbonomic to deploy the workloads. By default, the deploy date is the day that you define the placement. If the deploy date is today, then you can click **DEPLOY** to deploy the workloads immediately.
5. Save your settings.

If you're creating a reservation, click **RESERVE**. For a deployment, click **DEPLOY**.

For a deployment, if the deploy date is today, then Turbonomic deploys the workloads immediately. If the deploy date is later, or if you are creating a reservation, Turbonomic reserves the resources for the workloads, and deploys them on the specified date.
Dashboards: Focused Views

Dashboards give you views of your environment that focus on different aspects of the environment’s health. At a glance, you can gain insights into service performance health, workload improvements over time, actions performed and risks avoided, and savings in cost. For cloud environments, you can see utilization of reserved instances, potential savings, required investments, and the cost/performance of specific cloud accounts.

The Dashboards page lists all the dashboards that are available to you, including the Executive Dashboards and any custom dashboards that your account can access. To view a dashboard, click its name in the list.

Turbonomic ships with two Executive Dashboards already in place. These dashboards give you overviews of your on-prem and cloud environments, showing how you have improved your environment over time.

From the Dashboard page, you can also create your own custom dashboards.
Things You Can Do

- Create custom dashboards:
  See Creating and Editing Custom Dashboards (page 154).

- View the On-Prem Executive Dashboard:
  See On-Prem Executive Dashboard (page 151).

- View the Cloud Executive Dashboard:
  See Cloud Executive Dashboard (page 152).

NOTE:
In charts that show tables, if the table contains more than 500 cells, then the User Interface disables the option to export the chart as PDF. You can still export the chart as a CSV file to load in a spreadsheet.

Executive Dashboards

Executive Dashboards are a scorecard of your On-Prem and Cloud environments. The Executive Dashboards demonstrate how well you are improving performance, cost, and compliance by leveraging the Workload Automation that Turbonomic provides as well as opportunities for further improvements that are available.

Turbonomic ships with two Executive Dashboards:

- On-Prem Executive Dashboard
- Cloud Executive Dashboard

NOTE:
Turbonomic ships these dashboards with default configurations. To edit either dashboard, you must log in with the administrator user account. Users logged in with that account can add or remove chart widgets, and change widget scopes. For information about editing dashboards, see Creating and Editing Custom Dashboards (page 154).
On-Prem Executive Dashboard

The On-Prem Executive Dashboard shows the overall performance, capacity, and compliance in your on-prem infrastructure. This includes insights into:

- **Actions History**
  - The **On-Prem Environment** chart widget shows you an overview of your on-prem environment that Turbonomic is managing and controlling. The chart displays the workloads and the infrastructure that Turbonomic discovered.
  - The **Workload Improvements** chart widget shows how the efficiency, performance, and policy risks associated with your workloads have disappeared as you have increased your adoption of Turbonomic Workload Automation. The chart tracks how your workloads have grown as your execution of actions have increased or decreased as your environment achieves and maintains its desired states over time.
  - The **All Actions** chart widget shows the number of actions that Turbonomic has generated versus the ones executed. This gives you an understanding of where there were more opportunities for improvement that were not taken in the past versus those that are available today.

- **Opportunities**
  - The **Workload by Performance**, **Workload by Compliance**, and **Workload by Efficiency** chart widgets indicate workload health by showing the risks that are currently in your environment and each classification of those risks. You can click the Show Actions button on the chart to reveal all of the outstanding actions that need to be taken to resolve those risks on your workloads.
The Necessary Investments and Potential Savings chart widgets together project how the current actions to improve performance, efficiency, and compliance will impact the cost of your expenditures.

- Current State
  - The Top Clusters by Headroom chart widget shows all of the clusters in your on-prem environment and what their current capacity is for CPU, memory, and storage. In the default view, the chart shows the top five clusters and you can click the Show All button to see all of the clusters. In the Show All list, you can also export the headroom data as a CSV or PDF. Click on an individual cluster to navigate to that cluster and view more details about its current capacity and health.
  - The Virtual Machines vs Hosts and Storage and the Virtual Machines vs Hosts and Storage -Density chart widgets show how your overall density has improved in your on-prem environment. A high count of VMs per host or storage means that your workloads are densely packed.

Cloud Executive Dashboard

The Cloud Executive Dashboard shows your overall cloud expenditures and how you can improve performance and reduce cost. This includes insights into:

- Actions History
  - The Cloud Environment chart widget shows you an overview of your cloud environment that Turbonomic is managing and controlling. The chart displays the workloads, cloud service providers, and cloud accounts that you currently have set up as Turbonomic targets.
The **Workload Improvements** chart widget shows how the efficiency, performance, and policy risks associated with your workloads have disappeared as you have increased your adoption of Turbonomic Workload Automation. The chart tracks how your workloads have grown as your execution of actions have increased or decreased as your environment achieves and maintains its desired states over time.

The **Cost Saved by Actions** chart widget shows what your costs would be if you had not taken any actions (missed opportunities), compared with the cost savings you have gained by taking Turbonomic actions.

### Opportunities

- The **Workload by Performance**, **Workload by Compliance**, and **Workload by Efficiency** chart widgets indicate workload health by showing the risks that are currently in your environment and each classification of those risks. You can click the Show Actions button on the chart to reveal all of the outstanding actions that need to be taken to resolve those risks on your workloads.

- The **Necessary Investments** and **Potential Savings** chart widgets together project how the current actions to improve performance, efficiency, and compliance will impact the cost of your expenditures.

- The **Cloud Estimated Cost** chart widget shows estimated monthly costs and investments for the cloud. Monthly cost amounts are summarized as amounts with and without actions.

### Current State

- The **Top Accounts** chart widget shows all of the cloud accounts in your cloud environment and what the utilization is for each account. You can see the number of workloads, estimated monthly costs, saved by actions, and actions taken. In the default view, the chart shows the top five cloud accounts and you can click the Show All button to see all of the accounts. In the Show All list, you can also export the account cost data as a CSV or PDF.

- The **Cost Breakdown by Tag** chart widget shows the tags you have assigned to your cloud resources and the costs associated with each of these tagged categories. The **Cost Breakdown by Cloud Service Provider** chart widget is an Expenses chart widget that shows your expenses for each cloud service provider.

### Usage of Reserved Instances

Reserved Instances (RIs) reduce cost by offering a subscription-based payment plan. Turbonomic discovers these RI plans and tracks usage patterns to identify workloads that are good RI candidates. The Cloud Executive Dashboard shows whether you are getting the most out of your current RI strategy.

The **RI Utilization** chart widget shows how well you have utilized the reservation inventory. The chart compares the capacity for all reservations versus the RI consumption by virtual machines. The chart measures utilization in normalization factor units (NFUs), a measurement of capacity that does not depend on the instance family, or dollar amounts.

The **RI Coverage** chart widget compares the capacity of your current VM workload to the capacity of workload that is covered by Reserved Instances.
Creating and Editing Custom Dashboards

A custom dashboard is a view that you create to focus on specific aspects of your environment. You can create dashboards that are private to your user account, or dashboards that are visible to any user who logs into your Turbonomic deployment.

Two common approaches exist for creating custom dashboards:

- **Scope First**
  
  You can create a dashboard in which all of the chart widgets focus on the same scope of your environment. For example, you might want to create a dashboard that focuses on costs for a single public cloud account. In that case, as you add chart widgets to the dashboard, you give them all the same scope.

- **Data First**
  
  You might be interested in a single type of data for all groups of entities in your environment. For example, each chart widget in the dashboard can focus on Cost Breakdown by Cloud Service, but you set the scope of each chart widget to a different cloud region or zone.

Of course, you can mix and match, according to your needs. You can set any scopes or data sources to the chart widgets in a dashboard to set up whatever organization and focus that you want.

**NOTE:**

If you set a scope to your Turbonomic session, the specified scope does not affect your custom dashboards. For information about scoped views, see *Working With a Scoped View (page 91)*.

Creating a Dashboard

To create a custom dashboard:

1. Navigate to the Dashboard Page.
   
   Click to navigate to the Dashboard Page.
   
   This page lists all dashboards that are available to you.
   
   To view a dashboard, click its name in the list.

2. Create a new dashboard.
   
   Click **CREATE DASHBOARD** to add a new dashboard to your Turbonomic session. The dashboard appears with a default name and without chart widgets. The time range in the Time Slider is set to 24 hours by default.
3. Name the dashboard.
   Give a name that describes the dashboard. If you will share the dashboard with all Turbonomic users, the name will help them decide whether to view it.

4. Add chart widgets to the dashboard.
   Add as many chart widgets to the dashboard as you want. See Creating and Editing Chart Widgets (page 157).

5. Optionally, set the dashboard access.
   Click Gear to change the setting.
   Dashboard access can be:
   - **Only Me** – The dashboard is only available to your Turbonomic user account.
   - **All Users** – Every Turbonomic user can see this dashboard.
   
   By default, access is set to **Only Me**.

As soon as you create a new dashboard, it appears in the list on the Dashboard Page. Users with access to it can click the dashboard name in the list to view it.

At any time, if you are an administrator or the dashboard owner, you can view and make the following changes to the dashboard:

- Add, edit, or delete widgets
- Change the dashboard name
- Change the dashboard access setting

For executive dashboards, only an administrator (username=administrator) can edit an executive dashboard.

**Editing a Dashboard**

If you have created a dashboard, you can change the name of the dashboard, its access settings, and its chart widgets. To change the chart widgets, see Creating and Editing Chart Widgets (page 157).
To edit a dashboard’s name or change its access settings:

1. Navigate to the Dashboard Page.
   
   ![Dashboard Page](image)

   Click to navigate to the Dashboard Page.

2. Click the name of the dashboard that you want to edit.

3. Click Gear in the dashboard.

   ![Edit Dashboard](image)

   In the dashboard’s Edit fly-out, make your changes.

   For the dashboard’s access, you can set:

   • Only Me – The dashboard is only available to your Turbonomic user account.
   
   • All Users – Every Turbonomic user can see this dashboard.

4. When you are done, close the fly-out panel.

   Your changes take effect when you close the fly-out.

**Deleting a Dashboard**

If you are an administrator or the dashboard owner, you can delete a custom dashboard. You cannot delete executive dashboards.

To delete a custom dashboard:

1. Navigate to the Dashboard Page.
   
   ![Dashboard Page](image)

   Click to navigate to the Dashboard Page.

   This page lists all dashboards that are available to you.

2. Delete one or more dashboards.
Creating and Editing Chart Widgets

Turbonomic displays information about your environment in various chart widgets. To focus on the information you need, you can add new chart widgets to scoped views and custom dashboards, and you can edit existing chart widgets. You can also change the display order of chart widgets in dashboards.

When you create or edit a chart widget, you can choose a variety of settings. For example, in the Top 5 Utilized chart widget, if you choose Clusters as the Entity Type, you can then choose Utilization as the Data Type and Storage Provisioned as the Commodity.

Creating a Chart Widget

To create a new chart widget:

1. Click Add Widget or Add Chart.

On a custom dashboard, click Add Widget at the top-right corner. In a scoped view, each chart has Add Chart above or below it. Click the button to open the Widget Gallery.

2. Choose a chart widget in the Widget Gallery.

The Widget Gallery is a list of thumbnail previews of chart widgets.

You can scroll through the gallery or search it. For example, if you type "Health" in the Search field, the results are two chart widgets, Health and Workload Health. You can choose chart widgets from these categories:

- Actions and Impact
- Status and Details
- Cloud
- On-Prem

To see the possible displays of a specific chart widget, use the horizontal scroll bar at the bottom of the thumbnail to scroll through the display choices.

To choose a chart widget to add it to your custom dashboard, click the thumbnail preview.

The Widget Preview window with the Edit fly-out opens.

3. Configure the settings for your chart widget.

Chart widget settings determine the data that the chart widget will show.

In the list, choose the checkbox for each dashboard you want to delete and click Trash can.
In the Edit fly-out, choose the settings and click **Update Preview** to display the result in the Widget Preview pane. When you are satisfied with your settings, click **Save**. The chart widget is added to your custom dashboard. For information about settings, see **Chart Widget Settings (page 159)**.

For example:

To delete a chart widget from your custom dashboard, choose **Delete** in the More options menu at the top-right corner of the chart widget.

**Methods to Access Chart Widget Settings**

Two methods exist for accessing the chart widget settings in the Edit fly-out:

- You can access the settings in the Edit fly-out when you add a chart widget to your dashboard after you click a thumbnail preview.

- For an existing chart widget in a dashboard, you can choose **Edit** in the More options menu at the top-right corner.
Chart Widget Settings

Chart widget settings vary according to the type of chart widget. Also, depending on the value that you choose for a setting, additional settings may appear. The following is a list of frequently-used chart widget settings:

• **Scope**

  The set of entities in your environment that this chart widget represents. By default, the chart widget scope is set to **Global Environment**.

  For every type of chart widget, you have the option to set the chart's scope. To do so:

  1. Click the **Click to change scope** button to open the Entity Picker.

  2. In the Entity Picker, choose the entity or group that you want.

     The entity or group is added to the **Scope** field.
• Timeframe
The timeframe for historical data or projections in the chart. Choices for the chart's timeframe are: Default, Last 2 Hours, Last 24 Hours, Last 7 Days, Last 30 Days, and Last Year.

If you set the timeframe to **Default**, the dashboard Time Slider controls the timeframe setting. For example, if your dashboard Time Slider is set to one month (1M), then all chart widgets with the Default timeframe in that dashboard are set to one month and show information for one month. Note that the dashboard Time Slider does not override the other specific timeframe settings.

• Chart Type
The chart widget's display type. Most chart widgets can display horizontal bar or ring charts. Other display choices can include tabular data, band chart, stacked bar, line, or area charts.

• Entity Type
The type of entities or their data that you want to display in this chart widget. Choices vary (for example, Applications, Hosts, Virtual Data Centers, Storage Devices, and so on).

• Commodity
The resources that you want this chart widget to monitor. Some charts can monitor multiple commodities. Choices vary (for example, CPU, Memory, Virtual Storage, and so on).
Chart Types

Turbonomic provides many different types of charts in the Widget Gallery. To design custom dashboards, you should be familiar with the data each chart presents. These charts provide information on actions, impact, status of your environment, and details about specific entities, cloud, and on-prem environments.

- **Actions and Impact Chart Types** *(page 162)*
  - All Actions Charts *(page 162)*
  - Pending Actions Charts *(page 164)*
  - Risks Avoided Charts *(page 166)*
  - Improvement Statistics Charts *(page 167)*
  - Optimized Improvements Charts *(page 168)*
  - Cloud Cost Comparison Charts *(page 169)*
  - Potential Savings or Investments Charts *(page 171)*

- **Status and Details Chart Types** *(page 172)*
  - Health Charts *(page 172)*
  - Basic Info Charts *(page 173)*
  - Capacity and Usage Charts *(page 173)*
  - Multiple Resources Charts *(page 174)*
  - Resources Charts *(page 175)*
  - Top 5 Utilized Charts *(page 177)*
  - Workload Health Charts *(page 178)*
  - Environment Charts *(page 179)*
  - Workload Improvements Charts *(page 180)*

- **Cloud Chart Types** *(page 180)*
  - Billing Breakdown Charts *(page 181)*
  - Estimated Cost Breakdown Charts *(page 181)*
  - Compute Cost Breakdown Charts *(page 182)*
  - Expenses Charts *(page 183)*
  - Template Breakdown Charts *(page 186)*
Actions and Impact Chart Types

These chart widgets provide information on actions, pending actions, risks that you avoided, improvements, resource comparison, and potential savings or investments.

Actions Charts

Actions charts keep a running history of the actions that Turbonomic has recommended, which actions you have ignored, which ones you have executed manually, and which ones Turbonomic executed.

These charts use historical data from the Turbonomic database. You can set the chart to show hourly, daily, weekly, or monthly data points.

Filter

You can filter the chart to show all actions or all accepted actions (actions that have been executed).

Chart Type

You can set the display to:

- Stacked Bar Chart
• Tabular
• Area Chart
• Text

Examples:
• Stacked Bar

![All Actions]

• Tabular

To see the full list, along with action details and controls to execute actions, click **Show All** at the bottom of the chart.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DATE CREATED</th>
<th>ACTION DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>RISK TYPE</th>
<th>EXECUTION</th>
<th>DATE EXECUTED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18 Oct 2018 17:25 PM</td>
<td>Provision PhysicalMachine oct17-host01.eng.rimturbo.com</td>
<td>Performance Assurance</td>
<td>Recommended</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 Oct 2018 17:25 PM</td>
<td>Provision PhysicalMachine oct17-host01.eng.rimturbo.com</td>
<td>Performance Assurance</td>
<td>Recommended</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 Oct 2018 17:25 PM</td>
<td>Provision PhysicalMachine oct17-host01.eng.rimturbo.com</td>
<td>Performance Assurance</td>
<td>Recommended</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Executing and Viewing All Actions**

At the bottom of action charts, for tabular and text chart types, click **Show All Actions** to see a full listing of the actions that are in the scope of the chart.
To execute an action, select it and click **APPLY SELECTED**. You can execute more than one action at a time.

Use **Search** to filter the list by string match. You can also filter the list by action type, action mode (manual or automatable), or action category.

You can expand each list entry to see details about the recommended action.

## Pending Actions Charts

Pending Actions charts show the actions that Turbonomic recommends to improve the current state of your environment. This chart gives an overview that includes how many actions are pending, and the estimated savings or costs associated with those actions.

### Chart Type

You can set the display to:

- Text
- Ring Chart
- Horizontal Bar
- List

**Examples:**

- Text
  
  The counts of Start/Buy actions, Placement actions, Delete actions, and Scaling (resizing) actions for the current scope. If the chart’s scope includes public cloud entities, then the chart also shows estimated savings and costs associated with the actions.
• **Ring Chart**
  The counts of different actions for the current scope. The ring chart gives a quick visual indication of the kinds of actions that are pending.

• **Horizontal Bar**
  The counts of Start/Buy actions, Placement actions, Delete actions, and Scaling (resizing) actions for the current scope. The horizontal bar gives a quick visual indication of the kinds of actions that are pending.

• **List**
  An abbreviated listing of the actions for the chart’s scope. To see the full list, along with action details and controls to execute actions, click **Show All** at the bottom of the chart.
Executing and Viewing All Actions

At the bottom of action charts, for tabular and text chart types, click **Show All Actions** to see a full listing of the actions that are in the scope of the chart.

To execute an action, select it and click **APPLY SELECTED**. You can execute more than one action at a time.

Use **Search** to filter the list by string match. You can also filter the list by action type, action mode (manual or automatable), or action category.

You can expand each list entry to see details about the recommended action.

Risks Avoided Charts

As you execute the actions Turbonomic has recommended, you improve your environment's health and avoid risks to performance or cost. These charts show how many risks you have avoided over time. For example, the charts can show how many over-provisioning and congestion risks you avoided.
Chart Type

You can set the display to:

- Text
- Ring Chart
- Horizontal Bar

Improvement Statistics Charts

Turbonomic automatically executes or recommends actions, depending on the automation policies that you set up. For the recommended actions, you can use Improvement Statistics charts to show how utilization of resources would change assuming you accept all of the pending actions.

Commodity

Depending on the entity type, you can add a different resource commodity that you want to measure. For example:

- Application Resources
- Consumed Application Resources
- Historical Performance
- Workload Density
- Compute Resources
- Provided Compute Resources
- Consumed Compute Resources
- Storage Resources
- Network Resources

Entity Type

Entity types you can choose include:

- Applications
- Data Centers
- Databases
- Database Servers
- Disk Arrays
- Load Balancer
Dashboards: Focused Views

- Networks
- Hosts
- Storage Devices
- Virtual Applications
- Virtual Data Centers
- Virtual Machines

**Chart Type**

The chart shows information as Text. It lists the given resources, comparing current utilization with the expected utilization after you execute all pending actions.

**Optimized Improvements Charts**

Turbonomic automatically executes or recommends actions, depending on the policies that you set up. For the recommended actions, you can use Optimized Improvements charts to show how utilization of resources would change assuming you accept all of the pending actions.

**Entity Type**

Entity types you can choose include:
- Applications
- Data Centers
- Databases
- Database Servers
- Disk Arrays
- Load Balancer
- Networks
- Hosts
- Storage Devices
- Virtual Applications
- Virtual Data Centers
- Virtual Machines
Commodity

Depending on the entity type, you can add different resource commodities that you want to measure. For example, for a chart of Hosts, you can measure commodities such as CPU, Memory, and even network flow between VMs that are on the same host (In-Provider flow) or on other hosts (In-DPOD or Cross-DPOD flow).

Display

The chart shows two bar charts for the entities that are in scope – One chart for current consumption, and the other for the consumption you would expect to see if you accept all the pending actions.

Cloud Cost Comparison Charts

Cloud Cost Comparison charts show current resource utilization before and after pending actions are executed. If you execute pending actions for an entity, then the entity will be in the After Actions state.

Entity Type

Entity types you can choose include:

- Databases
- Database Servers
- Storage Devices
- Virtual Machines
- Workloads
Chart Type

You can set the display to:

- Line Chart
- Tabular

The table can list the following changes and costs:

- Workloads with performance risks
  Count of VMs, databases, or database servers in this scope that can put QoS at risk.

- Workloads with efficiency opportunities
  Count of VMs, databases, or database servers in this scope that are underutilized, or that can improve their costs by using RIs.

- Workloads out of compliance
  Count of VMs, databases, or database servers in this scope that violate current configuration requirements or defined policies.

- On-Demand Compute Cost
  On-demand cost of VMs before and after actions, including OS licenses when appropriate. After-action costs are the result of scaling actions and changes in RI coverage. VMs will not scale to pending RI purchase actions.

- Reserved Compute Cost
  For this scope of VMs, the monthly fees and up-front payment for RI resources the given VMs can use, amortized into monthly cost over the term of the reservation. This cost accrues whether the VMs use the RI resources or not.

- On-Demand Database Cost
  The cost of database services in this scope that are covered by on-demand pricing.

- Storage Cost
  The cost of storage for this scope. For workload scope, the cost of volumes attached to the workloads. For storage scope, the cost of all attached and unattached volumes in this scope.

- Total Cost
  The totals of the different costs in this scope.

Example: A tabular Cloud Cost Comparison chart with a scope of all cloud VMs. The After Actions column indicates the After Actions state the cloud VMs are in after you execute all pending actions.
Potential Savings or Investment Charts

Potential Savings or Investment charts help you examine potential savings or necessary investments. These charts show the potential savings or necessary investments, assuming you execute all pending actions that Turbonomic identifies as the result of its analysis.

For example, if there is a pending action to suspend a host, the Potential Savings chart shows a savings. For cloud and hybrid environments, you might be able to move workloads off of providers and decommission hosts or datastores. The Potential Savings chart shows the reduced cost that would result from those actions.

In cases where it is possible that some workloads are at performance risk, Turbonomic might decide on actions to provision more host or storage resources. The Necessary Investments chart shows how these actions translate to an increase in expenditure.

**Type**

You can choose potential savings or necessary investments.

**Chart Type**

You can set the display to:

- Text
- Ring Chart
- Horizontal Bar
Status and Details Chart Types

These chart widgets provide information on the status of your environment and details about specific entities.

Health Charts

Health charts show the current status of your environment, by entity type. For example, you can choose to show the health of all hosts in your environment, or the health of all the workloads running on a public cloud region.

Entity Type

Entity types you can choose include:

- Applications
- Data Centers
- Databases
- Database Servers
- Disk Arrays
- Load Balancer
- Networks
- Hosts
- Storage Devices
- Virtual Applications
- Virtual Data Centers
- Virtual Machines

Chart Type

You can set the display to:

- Text
- Ring Chart
- Horizontal Bar
Basic Info Charts

The Basic Info charts provide an information overview of the single entity that you chose for the Chart Widget Scope value.

**Type**

You can choose:

- **Entity Information.**
  This lists a description of the entity (the ID, Name, State, Severity, Target Name, and so on).
- **Related Group Information**
  This lists all of the groups in which the entity participates.
- **Related Tag Information**
  This lists any available tag information for the entity. For example, in a cloud environment, if a virtual machine has tags applied to it, the chart shows those tags for the virtual machine.

**Display**

The chart shows the information as a Tabular chart.

Capacity and Usage Charts

These charts list the resources you want to view, showing their allocated capacity, and the amount of their allocated capacity that is in use.

**Entity Type**

Entity types you can choose include:

- Applications
- Data Centers
- Databases
- Database Servers
- Disk Arrays
- Load Balancer
- Networks
- Hosts
• Storage Devices
• Virtual Applications
• Virtual Data Centers
• Virtual Machines

Commodity

Depending on the entity type, you can add different resource commodities that you want to measure. For example, for a chart of Hosts, you can measure commodities such as CPU, Memory, ready queue, and even network flow between VMs that are on the same host (In-Provider flow) or on other hosts (In-DPOD or Cross-DPOD flow).

Display

The chart shows the information as a Tabular chart.

Multiple Resources Charts

Multiple Resources charts show the historical utilization of commodities for an entity or a group of entities.

Entity Type

Entity types you can choose include:
• Applications
• Data Centers
• Databases
• Database Servers
• Disk Arrays
• Load Balancer
• Networks
• Hosts
• Storage Devices
• Virtual Applications
• Virtual Data Centers
• Virtual Machines
Commodity

Depending on the entity type, you can add different resource commodities that you want to measure. For example, for a chart of Hosts, you can measure commodities such as CPU, Memory, ready queue, and even network flow between VMs that are on the same host (In-Provider flow) or on other hosts (In-DPOD or Cross-DPOD flow).

Show Peaks

Choose the Show Peaks checkbox to include peak information in the chart.

Display

The chart shows the historical utilization and, if chosen, the peak information as a Line chart.

Resources Charts

Resources charts show the utilization of a resource over time, for the entities in the chart's scope. The plot shows Average Used, Peaks and Lows, and the Average Capacity. The chart title shows the resource that you are plotting, as well as the chart's current scope (if other than default scope).

To see finer details about your environment, you can set up charts that show utilization of specific commodities. For example, you can set up a dashboard with a number of Resources charts with their scopes set to the same cluster. Such a dashboard gives you a detailed look at the health of that cluster. Or you could make a dashboard with each chart scoped to a different cluster, but have all the charts show the same resource utilization.

Commodity

You can set a Resources chart to one of the following resources:

- Operational Cost
  For workloads on the cloud, the cloud providers' costs for VM compute, storage, OS license, and static IP.
- CPU
  Host CPU capacity, measured in MHz. This shows what percentage of CPU cycles are devoted to processing instructions.
- IO Throughput
  Data rate through the host’s IO adapter, measured in KBytes/sec.
- Memory
  Host memory, measured in Kbytes.
- Net Throughput
  Data rate through the host’s Network adapter, measured in Kbytes/sec.
- Clusters
• Number of Containers
• Containers Per Host
  The average number of containers per host, considering all hosts in the chart's scope.
• Containers Per Storage
  The average number of containers per storage device, considering all storage in the chart's scope.
• numDBSs
• Accounts
  The current usage accounts.
• numDBIs
• numDB
• numUnattachedVolumes
• numWorkloads
• Host
• Storage Devices
• numVDCs
• Virtual Machine
• Virtual Machines Per Host
  The average number of VMs per host, considering all hosts in the chart's scope.
• Virtual Machines Per Storage
  The average number of VMs per storage device, considering all storage in the chart's scope.
• RICost
• Risk Index
  A measure of the impact on Quality of Service (QoS) that a consumer will experience. The higher the Risk Index on a provider, the more risk to QoS for any consumer of that provider’s services.
• Storage Access
  Storage access operations per second.
• Storage Amount
  Datastore capacity, measured in Kbytes.
• Storage Provisioned
  How much the given storage is over-subscribed. Storage Provisioned capacity is the storage capacity multiplied by the Storage Overprovisioned Percentage (200 by default). The higher this value, the greater the risk that storage is over-committed.
• Virtual CPU
The CPU capacity allocated to a VM guest OS, measured in MHz.

- **Virtual Memory**
  The memory allocated to a VM guest OS, measured in Kbytes.

  Note that percentages of allocated VMem are measured against whichever is the less of: The VMem limit (if set) or the allocated VMem capacity. This is also true in reports and recommended actions. For example, assume a VM with allocated VMem of 8 GB, but a limit of 4 GB. In this case, the percentage in a chart shows the percentage utilized of 4GB.

- **Virtual Storage**
  Virtual storage allocated to a VM, measured in Kbytes.

**Chart Type**

You can set the following types of display:

- **Line Chart**
  A line plot showing resource utilization over time. The vertical green bar shows the current moment – Plots that extend to the right project utilization into the future.

- **Band Chart**
  Lines plot average capacity and average used. The chart shows a band where its thickness indicates peaks and lows.

**Top 5 Utilized Charts**

Top 5 Utilized charts show the five entities or groups with the most utilization.

**Entity Type**

Entity types you can choose include:

- Accounts (public cloud)
- Applications
- Clusters (of hosts)
- Data Centers
- Databases
- Database Servers
- Disk Arrays
- Load Balancer
- Networks
- Hosts
Dashboards: Focused Views

- Resource Groups
- Storage Devices
- Virtual Applications
- Virtual Data Centers
- Virtual Machines
- Volumes
- Wasted Files

Commodity

Depending on the entity type, you can add one or more different resource commodities that you want to measure.

Display

The chart lists the top entities by consumption of the commodities that you have set. Depending on the entity type and scope, you can sort the information. To view the utilization details, hover over the entity to display the tooltip. To drill down to an entity, click the entity name in the chart widget. This sets the scope to that entity.

Example: A top five clusters chart widget which can be sorted by headroom or exhaustion.

Workload Health Charts

Workload Health charts show the health of workloads from the compliance, efficiency improvement, and performance assurance perspectives. These charts use current (real-time) data for the workloads chosen for the chart widget scope.
Dashboards: Focused Views

Chart Type
You can set the display to:

- Text
- Ring Chart
- Horizontal Bar

Breakdown By
You can choose:

- Compliance
  This indicates whether workloads are not violating a placement policy ("In Compliance"). Workloads that are not in compliance might be running on a host or placed on storage, for example, in violation of a placement policy.

- Efficiency Improvement
  This lists whether workloads are running on under-utilized hosts or whether the workload is not being utilized. The listed efficiency improvements indicate actions that you should consider to save money.

- Performance Assurance
  This indicates whether workloads are performing well or not. For example, if the utilization is poor, the chart indicates actions that you should consider to improve performance. For example, you might consider whether to resize the workload or move it to a host with more resources.

Workload Health charts indicate actions that you should consider to improve the health of workloads. To see a list of actions, click Show Actions at the bottom of the chart.

Environment Charts
Environment charts provide an overview of your environment. They show the targets that you are managing and count the entities that Turbonomic has discovered through those targets. For example, you can display the cloud service providers, hypervisors, and the number of workloads.

Environment Type
You can choose one of the following views:

- Hybrid (both on-prem and cloud)
- Cloud
- On-Prem
Display

The chart shows the information as a Text chart type.

Workload Improvements Charts

Workload Improvements charts track the health of workloads in your environment over time, and map the health to the number of actions Turbonomic has executed in that time period.

In the chart, you can see the significance and value of executed actions:

• Workloads Overall
  This is the total number of workloads over time.

• Workloads with Performance Risks
  These are the workloads that are not performing well.

• Inefficient Workloads
  These are the workloads that are running on under-utilized hosts or are not being utilized.

• Workloads Out of Compliance
  These are the workloads that are violating a placement policy. Workloads that are not in compliance might running on a host or placed on storage, for example, that violate a placement policy.

• Executed actions
  Actions that Turbonomic executed.

The vertical line shows when the last data point was polled in your environment.

Display

The chart shows the information as a Line chart.

Cloud Chart Types

These chart widgets provide information on the status of your cloud environment.

For many cloud chart widgets that display costs and savings, Turbonomic uses the billing reports from your cloud service providers to build a picture of your overall costs. The data includes all costs that the service provider includes in the billing report. Turbonomic parses these reports into the formats that it uses for the cloud chart widgets.
NOTE:
In order for Turbonomic to access AWS monthly reports, you must have created a Cost and Usage report in your AWS account and you must store it in an S3 bucket.
For more information, see Displaying AWS Spend In Turbonomic.

Billing Breakdown Charts

Billing Breakdown charts enable you track your expenditure on cloud services, so you can track overall cost, cost by region, or cost by cloud accounts. Turbonomic discovers pricing for cloud services through the cloud accounts that you configured as targets. Turbonomic uses the billing reports from your cloud service providers to build a picture of your overall costs. The data includes all costs that the service provider includes in the billing report.

Chart Type

You can set the display to:

- Text
- Ring Chart
- Horizontal Bar

Estimated Cost Breakdown Charts

To keep track of your costs on the public cloud, you can see costs for database, database servers, storage devices, and virtual machines. In this way, you can go to your custom dashboard or any view that includes this chart to quickly see how your cloud costs develop over time.

The Estimated Cost Breakdown charts show:

- Compute cost: The cost of resources that are allocated to a workload template.
- Storage: The cost for the utilization of storage on different storage tiers. For storage devices, you can also show the cost of utilization by unattached tiers.
- License: The cost of the operating system (OS) if the virtual machine is not on an open source operating system. It can also be the cost of an application license.
- IP: The cost of a static IP address for the virtual machine, if you have contracted to use a static IP address.
- RI Compute: The cost of Reserved Instances.
- Spot Compute: The cost of running spot instances.
- Other: A combination of other costs like network costs, for example.
**Entity Type**

Entity types you can choose include:

- Databases
- Database Servers
- Storage Devices
- Virtual Machines
- Workloads

**Chart Type**

You can set the display to:

- Text
- Ring Chart
- Horizontal Bar

Example: Cost Breakdown for Virtual Machines

![Cost Breakdown Chart](image)

**Compute Cost Breakdown Charts**

Compute Cost Breakdown charts help you keep track of compute costs for your cloud virtual machines. Compute cost is the cost of resources that are allocated to a workload template. Over time, the Compute Cost Breakdown charts show the compute costs per hour for On-Demand, RI Usage, and Bidding.

**Chart Type**

You can set the display to:

- Area Chart
Expenses Charts

To help you manage costs for your public cloud environment, Turbonomic tracks compute, storage, license, and IP costs for the workloads in your environment. Are you spending too much on your cloud resources? Use Expenses charts to see how your expenses evolve and to keep track of these costs over time.

Tracking Cloud Cost

Turbonomic tracks your cloud spending in two ways:

- **Cost for Services**
  
  Turbonomic uses the billing reports from your cloud service providers, as they are associated with your cloud targets. Turbonomic parses these reports to get cost breakdowns by service, service provider, and cloud account.

- **Workload Expenses**
  
  Turbonomic tracks the following expenses for your workloads:
  
  - **Compute expenses**
    
    Are derived from the hourly charge of a virtual machine, specific to the template size (instance type or VM size).
  
  - **Storage expenses**
    
    Are derived from the disks that are attached to the virtual machine, specific to the storage tier.
  
  - **License expenses**
    
    Are derived from the cloud service provider compute charges. A cloud service provider compute charge is the difference between a basic Linux template and the charges for the same template when running with a commercially licensed operating system. There are no license charges for AWS Linux or the equivalent operating system on Azure.
  
  - **IP expenses**
Dashboards: Focused Views

Are derived from static IP addresses for the virtual machine, if you have contracted to use static IP addresses. Turbonomic uses this cost information when making VM resize and placement decisions, both in real time and in plans. You can see this information in Expenses charts and in the results of Migrate to Cloud plans.

Commodity

To keep track of your spending on the public cloud, you can see costs by cloud service, cloud account, and cloud provider. In this way, you can go to your custom dashboard or any view that includes this chart to quickly see how your cloud costs develop over time.

You can choose:

• Expenses
• Average Expenses
• Cost Breakdown by Cloud Service Provider
• Cost Breakdown by Cloud Account
• Cost Breakdown by Cloud Service
• Cost Breakdown by Component

Chart Type

You can set the display to:

• Line Chart
• Stacked Bar Chart
• Area Chart

Examples:

• Expenses
  See your hourly expenses over time, as well as overall monthly and yearly costs.

• Cost Breakdown by Cloud Service Provider
  Costs over time for each cloud service provider that you use in your cloud environment. For example, you can compare the costs you incur on AWS to costs on Azure.

  For example:
You can open more than one account from a single service provider. If you are running workloads on different service providers, then this chart shows the distribution of costs across them.

- **Cost Breakdown by Cloud Account**
  
  Costs over time for each account that you have set up as a target in Turbonomic.

  Each public cloud target that you configure for Turbonomic represents a public cloud account. If you have targeted numerous accounts, then this chart gives you a quick readout of your costs per each one. You can see whether one account shows unusually high cost, or perhaps an account is hardly used at all and you can consider closing it down.

- **Cost Breakdown by Cloud Service**
  
  This chart shows cloud cost over time by cloud services. For example, you can see the breakdown of cloud cost by cloud services.
To evaluate your use of different services, you can follow your expenditure for each one. Note that for AWS clouds the service names begin with "Amazon" or "AWS". Other services show the names as they are presented in the service provider's billing report.

- **Cost Breakdown by Component**
  This chart shows costs over time for each component of your cloud utilization. You can see costs for:
  - Compute
  - IP (static IPs for workloads)
  - License (OS license)
  - Storage
  - Capacity

**Reading a Cost Breakdown Chart**

The chart tracks overall cost over time. The chart time scale matches the time scale you set for the overall view (for the Overview, Cloud, or Details view). It includes a vertical line to show when the last data point that was polled from your environment. Data points to the right of the vertical line are projections into the future.

**NOTE:**
This cost information comes from billing reports. As you change the time scale, Turbonomic divides the reported information into the appropriate time units to match that scale. However, the source remains the same - Changing the scale does not affect the source data, or increase data polling.

The line chart shows expenses figured as overall cost per hour. The chart displays a tooltip with the date for the data point and the given values.

**Template Breakdown Charts**

Template Breakdown charts show the cloud templates that Turbonomic discovers for the chart widget scope. For example, if the Chart Widget Scope is set to All Cloud VMs and the Entity Type is set to Virtual Machine, the chart shows templates that the workloads use.
Entity Type
You can choose any entity type in the list.

Chart Type
You can set the display to:
- Text
- Ring Chart
- Horizontal Bar

Location Charts
Location charts show the regions in a world map. You can also click on any region to examine more detailed information in a scoped view.

Display
The chart shows the regions in countries in a Map chart.

Cost Breakdown By Tag Charts
Cost Breakdown By Tag charts show the costs for tagged cloud entities that Turbonomic discovered and commodities.

Custom X-axis
You can also define an X-axis using one of two commodities, Cost Breakdown by Zone or Cost Breakdown by Region, and choose one or more values for the commodity.

Chart Type
You can set the display to:
- Area Chart
- Stacked Bar Chart

Example: The Tag setting key is workload-type and the values are other and production.
Cost Saved By Actions Charts

Cost Saved By Actions charts show what your costs would be if you had not taken any actions (missed opportunities), compared with the cost savings you have gained by taking Turbonomic actions.

Chart Type

You can set the display to:

- Area Chart
- Text

RI Inventory Charts

RI Inventory charts show the Reserved Instance workloads that Turbonomic discovers, and lists them by the templates they use.

Click **Show all** to see the RI information for each template. The information includes the template name, count, platform, type, term, payment, location, Account ID, effective cost, utilization, savings, and expiration date. When you choose one or more checkboxes, the total appears at the top.

Chart Type

You can set the display to:

- Text
- Ring Chart
- Horizontal Bar
Recommended RI Purchases Charts

Recommended RI Purchases charts show the projected inventory of pending Reserved Instance purchases as generated by Turbonomic. The charts show the Reserved Instance workloads that Turbonomic discovers, and lists them by the available templates.

Click **Show all** to see the RI information for each template. The information includes the template name, count, platform, type, term, payment, location, Account ID, up-front cost, net savings, and break-even period. When you choose one or more checkboxes, the total count, cost, and savings of the chosen recommendations appear at the top.

**Chart Type**

You can set the display to:

- Text
- Ring Chart
- Horizontal Bar

Examples:

- Horizontal Bar

![Horizontal Bar Chart](chart.png)

- Viewing the **Show all** list

![Reserved Instances](chart.png)
RI Coverage Charts

RI Coverage charts compare the capacity of your current VM workload to the capacity of workload that is covered by Reserved Instances.

To see specific values, hover on a data point in the chart. A tooltip appears with a date for the data point and the normalization factor units (NFUs) for the workloads and the Reserved Instances.

Note that if you have a high percentage of on-demand workload, then you should be able to reduce your monthly costs by increasing RI coverage. To increase coverage, you resize workloads to instance types that have existing RI capacity. If you need more RI capacity, then Turbonomic will recommend the RI templates that you should buy.

Chart Type

You can set the display to:

- Area Chart
- Line Chart

RI Utilization Charts

RI Utilization charts shows how well you have utilized the reservation inventory. The chart compares the capacity for all reservations versus the RI consumption by virtual machines. The points that extend to the right of the vertical bar project utilization into the future. The chart measures utilization in normalization factor units (NFUs) or dollar amounts.

The desired goal is to use more or all of your purchased Reserved Instances which is indicated by the area to the right of the vertical bar.

Chart Unit

You can use the default NFU or set the chart unit to Dollar for U.S. dollar amounts.

For historical data stored in the database prior to version 6.3, use NFU. Historical data prior to version 6.3 cannot be displayed as dollar amounts.

Chart Type

You can set the display to:

- Area Chart
- Line Chart

Example: Area chart type with NFU chart units.
Dashboards: Focused Views

Cloud Estimated Cost Charts

Cloud Estimated Cost charts show estimated monthly costs and investments for the cloud. Monthly cost amounts are summarized as amounts with and without actions.

Display

The chart shows the information as a Text chart.

On-Prem Chart Types

These chart widgets provide information on the status of your on-prem environment.

Density Charts

Density charts show the number of workloads per host or storage. Also, they show the desired count of workloads, assuming you want to fill the headroom completely. Note that the Desired Workloads values are the results of running plans. These plans can calculate workload moves within a cluster to gain more efficiency, but they always respect the cluster boundaries – the plans never move VMs to hosts on different clusters.

You can specify the following types of Density charts:

• Virtual Machines vs Hosts
• Virtual Machines vs Storage
• Containers vs Hosts
• Containers vs Storage
• Virtual Machines vs Hosts and Storage
• Containers vs Hosts and Storage
• Headroom – The total number of workloads running in the chart’s scope, plus the total headroom for that scope
• Host and Storage Units – The numbers of active Hosts and Storage devices

Choose the Show Density checkbox to see the ratio of consumers to providers.

Chart Type

You can set the display to:
• Stacked Bar Chart
• Line Chart

Ports Charts

Ports charts show the most utilized northbound or southbound ports in your on-prem environment over a given time period. These charts are useful in Fabric environments where you license port channels.

Display

The chart shows the information as a Tabular chart.

Headroom Charts

Headroom charts show the available headroom in your on-prem environment.

You can specify the following types of Headroom charts:
• CPU Headroom
• Memory Headroom
• Storage Headroom

Commodity

You can choose:
• CPU Headroom
• Memory Headroom
• Storage Headroom
Display

The chart shows the information as an Area chart.

Example:

Exhaustion Time Charts

Exhaustion Time charts show your current growth and project into the future when your workloads will exceed the capacity of your current infrastructure. This is useful for future planning (for example, if you might need to buy more hardware).

You can track CPU, memory, and storage as well as the average monthly Virtual Machine growth and the average VM template. The amount of time is presented as days. For example, storage will be used up in 41 days.

Display

The chart shows the information as a Text chart.
Reports: Viewing Historical Data

The Turbonomic database stores a history of your managed environment. Turbonomic ships with a list of standard reports that give you selective snapshots of this history. The Reports Page gives you access to these reports – On this page you can:

- View reports – Generate up-to-the-minute reports or view saved reports (see Viewing Reports (page 195))
- Schedule reports to be generated at regular intervals (see Scheduling Reports (page 197))

Storage of Generated Reports

Whenever you generate a report, Turbonomic saves the report file on the server. When setting up subscriptions, be sure to choose reports that are useful for your organization. For example, assume you set up a daily subscription to a
Monthly Overview with Cluster Summary report. It’s likely that you could make do with a monthly subscription to such a report. Generating these reports daily can needlessly consume storage on the Turbonomic server.

You can set up subscriptions in a way that minimizes storage consumption. For example, if you make a weekly subscription to a report on Mondays, and then subscribe to the same report on Fridays, Turbonomic will save two copies of that report every week. Instead, make two subscriptions to the report on the same day, to save only one copy of the report each week.

Viewing Reports

To view a report, first select the type of report you want from the list. If the report has been scheduled, Turbonomic generates copies at regular intervals. You can view a copy of a scheduled report, or you can view an up-to-the-minute report — a report based on the current state of your environment.

To view a report, first select the type of report you want from the list. If the report has been scheduled, Turbonomic generates copies at regular intervals. You can view a copy of a scheduled report, or you can view an up-to-the-minute report — a report based on the current state of your environment.

Viewing an Up-To-The-Minute Report

To view a current report, you can:

• Create a new report and generate a copy
• Select a report in the list, and generate a copy

To create a new report and generate, click NEW REPORT in the Reports Page, and choose the type of report you want. Then make the settings you want:

• Format – Choose PDF or XLS.
• Schedule – You can leave this report unscheduled.
• Recipients – If you want to email the report, specify the addresses of the recipients.
When you're done, click GENERATE – Turbonomic generates the file and either sends it to your browser or sends it to the email addresses you specified.

To generate an up-to-the-minute copy from the list of scheduled reports, select the item in the list and click GENERATE. Turbonomic uses the current settings for this report to generate the file, and either sends it to your browser or sends it to the email addresses you have specified in the report’s settings.

Viewing Saved Reports

Whenever it generates a report, Turbonomic saves the report on the server. For a scheduled report that is in the list on the Reports Page, you can go back to these saved reports and view them.

To view a saved report:

1. On the Reports Page, click the name of the report you want to view.
   This opens the CONFIGURATION flyout page.
2. Display the GENERATED REPORTS tab on the flyout.
3. Set a date range.
   Turbonomic lists and copies of this report that were generated within that date range.
4. Click a list entry to see the report.
Scheduling Reports

When you schedule a report, Turbonomic generates a copy of it at the times you specify. To set up a subscription, you can provide email addresses of the recipients and Turbonomic will mail the report at the specified intervals.

The Reports Page gives you access to the reports that are available on your instance of Turbonomic. Use this page to:

- Choose the reports you want to see
  - Turbonomic ships with a full compliment of reports. To manage reports, you set up a list of the reports you want.
- Generate up-to-the-minute reports, on demand
- Schedule reports to be generated at regular intervals

To set up a subscription:

1. Navigate to the Reports Page.

   ![Reports Page]

   Click to navigate to the Reports Page.

   This page lists all the reports that you currently have set up and scheduled. You can select one or more of the listed reports and:
   - Generate the selected report to see the latest data
     - When you generate a report, you can choose to email it to its subscribers, or you can download the report to your browser.
   - Clone the selected reports to add new items to the list
     - After you clone a report, click the new report's name to change the report's configuration.
   - Delete selected reports to remove them from the list
     - This removes the report from the list, and cancels any schedules. However, this does not delete any report files that were already generated and saved on the Turbonomic server.

   To edit a report's configuration, click the entry in the list. This opens the Report CONFIGURATION fly-out where you can make your changes. Be sure to save your changes when you're done.

2. Configure a report and add it to the list.
To start configuring a report, click **NEW REPORT**. The next step is to choose the type of entities you want to report on. For example, choose Virtual Machines or Hosts. Turbonomic ships with a set of predefined reports for each entity type.

For the report type that you choose, you then set up the report configuration:

- **Schedule**
  How often Turbonomic will generate the report.

- **Scope**
  If present, you must choose a group or an entity to set the scope of the report.

- **Format**
  Specify whether to generate PDF or XSL reports.

- **Recipients**
  Specify one or more email addresses to create subscriptions. Turbonomic will email the report to the specified recipients at the scheduled intervals. You can add as many recipients as you want.

3. When you're finished making the settings, click **SAVE**.

   Turbonomic adds the report to the list on the Reports Page, and generates copies of it at the scheduled intervals.
Configuring Targets

A target is a service that performs management in your virtual environment. Turbonomic uses targets to monitor workload and to execute actions in your environment. When you configure a target, you specify the address of the service, and the credentials to connect as a client to it.

For each target, Turbonomic communicates with the service via the management protocol that it exposes — The REST API, SMI-S, XML, or some other management transport. Turbonomic uses this communication to discover the managed entities, monitor resource utilization, and execute actions.

To configure a target, you will choose the target type, specify the target’s address, and then provide credentials to access the target.

After you configure a target and add it to your installation, Turbonomic validates the connection, and then discovers the entities that target manages.

**NOTE:** Turbonomic regularly checks that your targets are valid. If it discovers that a target is invalid it then posts that status to the user interface. Under some circumstances, the target can become valid again, but the status does not update. If you see an Invalid message for a given target, try to manually validate the target again (click **VALIDATE**).

**Configuring a Target**

1. Navigate to the Settings Page.

[Settings icon]

Click to navigate to the Settings Page. From there, you can perform a variety of Turbonomic configuration tasks.

2. Choose Target Configuration.

[Target Configuration icon]

Click to navigate to the Target Configuration Page.
Configuring Targets

This page lists all the targets that you currently have configured for Turbonomic. You can inspect these targets, you can edit them (change address and credentials), and you can add a new target to Turbonomic.

3. **Filter the list of targets.**

To work with a long list of targets, you can filter by the target type. You can also type a string in the Search field to filter the list, and you can sort the list by target status or target name.

4. **Select one or more targets to work with.**
When you select a target you can:

- **Rediscover** — Direct Turbonomic to fully discover the entities that this target manages. This will rebuild the topology that is associated with this target.

- **Validate** — Direct Turbonomic to validate its connection with the target. For example, if you create a new user account on the target, you can edit the target connection to use that account, and then revalidate.

- **Delete** — When you delete a target, Turbonomic removes all the associated entities from its model of the inventory.

5. Expand an entry to see details, or click the entry to edit the target’s configuration. For example, if you entered the wrong username or password, you can change those credentials and validate the target again.

6. Create a new target and add it to Turbonomic.
First, select the type of target to add. Then for the type you choose, select the specific target technology. For example, select Hypervisor/vCenter to add a VMware vCenter Server target. Then provide the address and credentials for that target.

For more details, including a list of supported targets and configuration requirements, see the Turbonomic Target Configuration Guide.
AWS Billing Family Recognition

As you configure AWS targets, Turbonomic discovers AWS accounts that are consolidated into *billing families*. A billing family has one *master* account, and zero or more *member* accounts. By recognizing billing families, Turbonomic more accurately calculates cloud investments and savings, and makes more accurate recommendations for RI coverage.

In the Targets user interface, master accounts appear in bold, with a star next to them. You can expand the account entry to see the related member accounts. If you expand the entry for a member account, then the related accounts includes the family master, indicated by a star.

For RI purchases, different accounts in a billing family can share the same RI resources. At the same time, accounts in other billing families cannot use those RIs. This adds flexibility to your RI coverage, while maintaining order over the billing.

In Turbonomic, if you enable Billing Family Recognition, then you can see the billing family master and member accounts in the Targets user interface, and Turbonomic can recommend proper RI purchases within the correct billing families.

To enable Billing Family Recognition, ensure the following as you configure your AWS targets:

- Use the proper role for each AWS target

  To properly discover billing family information for a target, you must give Turbonomic credentials for an AWS role that includes the permission, `organizations:DescribeOrganization`. With that permission, Turbonomic can:

  - Discover master accounts and member accounts in different billing families
Configuring Targets

- Display the account names in the user interface
- Discover billing information for each family and account
- Recommend RI actions that respect billing family boundaries

Configure targets for the complete billing family

One billing family can consolidate a number of AWS accounts. For Turbonomic to include these accounts in its analysis, you must configure each one as a separate target. If you do not configure all the accounts in a billing family, then Turbonomic cannot discover complete billing information for that family, and its analysis will be based on incomplete information.

Turbonomic displays member accounts that have been configured as targets in regular text. For members that Turbonomic discovers but have not been configured as targets, Turbonomic displays their names in grayed text.

If you have enabled Billing Family Recognition, you should keep the following points in mind:

- Billing families can grow
  Turbonomic regularly checks the membership of your billing families. If it discovers a new member account, it adds that account to the list of members. If you have already configured the account as a target, then Turbonomic includes the new member in its analysis of billing families. If the new member is not already a target, then Turbonomic lists the new member in grayed text.

- You can configure discounts per billing family
  Turbonomic includes a feature to set a discount for a billing group, and to override that discount for specific template families within that scope. For more information, see Cloud Discounts (page 215) and Discount Override: AWS (page 221).

- You might see master accounts that have no member accounts
  AWS treats every account you create as a part of a billing family. Assume you created an account, but you had no reason to consolidate its billing with any other accounts. In that case, the account appears in the Turbonomic user interface as a master account, but it has no member accounts.
Setting Up Business Rules

Turbonomic includes a number of ways that you can guide its analysis to recommend actions that satisfy your business requirements. You can set up parameters, or business rules, that enforce placement of certain workloads on specific hardware, set limits to resource allocations, and constrain Turbonomic actions in other ways.

Note that Turbonomic works to keep your environment as efficient as possible (use as few resources as possible) while also assuring the performance of your applications. A pure environment with no constraints or placement rules would result in Turbonomic actions that only consider the optimal utilization of resources. In real-world applications it is often necessary to impose constraints.

To learn more about setting up business rules in Turbonomic, see:

- **Creating Groups** *(page 206)*
  Creating groups is a powerful way to divide your environment into logical sets of entities. You can use these groups to set scope for views and charts. Groups are also very useful to set scope for actions and policies.

- **Budgets and Costs** *(page 209)*
  Set up costs that Turbonomic uses in its calculations.

- **Creating Placement Policies** *(page 225)*
  Use workload policies to restrict certain workloads to specific hardware. For example, always place critical applications on gold-standard hardware, or to make sure certain workloads never run on specific hardware entities.

  You can also use placement policies to remove cluster constraints. Another placement policy can identify licensed hardware, and always make sure there is room on the hardware for applications that require those licenses.

- **Automation Policies** *(page 229)*
  Create policies that determine how Turbonomic will execute recommended actions for a given scope.
Creating Groups

Groups assemble collections of resources for Turbonomic to monitor and manage. When setting scope for your Turbonomic session, you can select groups to focus on those specific resources. For example, if you have a number of VMs devoted to a single customer, you can create a group of just those VMs. When running a planning scenario you can set the scope to work with just that group.

Turbonomic discovers groups that exist in your environment. These groups include PM clusters, and entities grouped by different logical boundaries. For example, Turbonomic discovers Storage by Disk Array, Physical Machines by Datacenter, and VMs by Network. In addition, Turbonomic discovers pools such as virtual datacenters, or folders that implement specific HA policies.

You can also create custom groups. Turbonomic supports two custom-grouping methods:

- Dynamic — You define these groups by specific criteria. You can group services according to naming conventions (all VM names that start with ny), resource characteristics (all physical machines with four CPUs), or other criteria such as time zone or number of CPUs.
  
  These groups are dynamic because Turbonomic updates the group as conditions change.

- Static — You create these groups by selecting the specific group members.

1. Navigate to the Settings Page.

   ![Settings Icon]

   Click to navigate to the Settings Page. From there, you can perform a variety of Turbonomic configuration tasks.

2. Choose Groups.

   ![Groups Icon]

   Click to navigate to the Group Management Page.
This page lists all the custom groups that you currently have configured for Turbonomic. You can:

- Expand an entry to see group details
- Select an entry to delete the group
- Click a group name to edit it
  
  For a dynamic group, you can edit the set of criteria that select the group members. For a static group, you can add or subtract specific members.
- Create new groups

To work with a long list of groups, you can filter by group type. For example, only show groups of VMs, or groups of host machines. You can also type a string in the Search field to filter the list, and you can sort the list by severity (per the most critical entity in group) or group name.

3. Expand an entry to see group details.

The details show you information about related entities such as how many hosts provide resources for a group of VMs. If there are any pending actions for the group, the details list those actions as well.

4. Create a new group.
Click **CREATE NEW GROUP**.

Next, choose a group type.

Then, specify the group settings:

- Give the group a name.
- Set whether the group will be static or dynamic.
  
  To create a static group, select the member entities from the list. To filter the list, set group criteria or enter a string in the **Search** field.
  
  To create a dynamic group, set group criteria. The list updates to show the resulting group members.
- Specify group criteria.
  
  These criteria are entity attributes that determine group membership. You might create a group of all VMs that have 4 VCPUs. You can choose properties of the member entities, and you can choose properties of entities that are related to the members. For example, you can make a group of VMs that are hosted by PMs with the substring "Development" in their names.
  
  As you set criteria, the list of entities updates to show the member entities.
  
  Note that you can use regular expression to express your match strings.
- When you are finished, save the group.
  
  **Save** adds this group to the **My Groups** collection.
Budgets and Costs

As you work with Turbonomic, you can set up costs that Turbonomic uses in its calculations. This setup includes:

- **Reserved Instance Costs (Purchase Profiles)**
  
  To recommend placing workloads on Reserved Instances (RIs), Turbonomic uses the real pricing plans that are available to the targets public cloud accounts. Setting up an RI Purchase Profile adds even more detail to the pricing structure that Turbonomic uses in its calculations.

- **Hardware Costs**
  
  As it generates reports and plans, Turbonomic can show estimated savings and costs for changes in the hosts and storage in your environment. To calculate these values, Turbonomic uses the prices you set up for Hardware Costs.

- **Cloud Discounts**
  
  Cloud service providers can offer their own price lists, including special costs for services or discounts for workloads. However, Turbonomic does not discover these adjustments. For example, to reflect any discounted prices in the Turbonomic display and in Turbonomic analysis, you must manually configure those discounts. In Turbonomic, you configure such discounts via Price Adjustments for specific billing groups in your cloud environment.

Cloud Profile

To work with workload placement on the public cloud, Turbonomic takes advantage of Reserved Instance (RI) pricing as it chooses the appropriate templates to use. Turbonomic uses real pricing in its analysis, including the RI pricing plans, and OS license costs. Cloud profiles set up parameters that Turbonomic can use as it makes these cost-based decisions.

RI Purchase Profile

![RI Purchase Profile](image)
To recommend placing workloads on Reserved Instances (RIs), Turbonomic uses the real pricing plans that are available to the target's public cloud accounts. Setting up an RI Purchase Profile adds even more detail to the pricing structure that Turbonomic uses in its calculations.

The RI Purchase Profile determines the costs that Turbonomic will use for all RI decisions in your environment. As it sees opportunities to move workloads to an RI term, Turbonomic determines the costs based on the purchase profile, and includes the cost information in action descriptions. Turbonomic also uses this information to calculate projected changes in cost, and to calculate costs for plan results.

Note that the settings you make here globally affect all of your public cloud environment. You can also make different RI Purchase Profile settings for plans as a way to test those changes in your environment.

To set up the RI Purchase Profile, navigate to **Settings > Budget and Costs**, and display the **CLOUD PROFILE** tab. Then make the settings for your purchase profile:

- **TYPE**
  For AWS environments, these correspond to the RI offering class. TYPE can be one of **Standard** or **Convertible**. Choose the type that corresponds to the RI types that you typically use in your environment.

- **TERM**
  The payment terms you contract for your RIs. TERM can be one of **1 Year** or **3 Year**. Typically, longer term payment plans cost less per year.

- **PAYMENT**
  The payment option that you prefer for your RIs:
  - All Upfront – You make full payment at the start of the RI term.
  - Partial Upfront – You make a portion of the payment at the start of the term, with the remain cost paid at an hourly rate.
  - No Upfront – You pay for the RIs at an hourly rate, for the duration of the term.

When you are satisfied with your RI Purchase Profile settings, click **APPLY SETTINGS**. Or to reset the form, click **RESET DEFAULTS**.

### OS Migration Profile

For Migrate to Cloud plans, Turbonomic calculates the best placement for workloads that you want to move onto the public cloud. The migration includes choosing the OS for each migrated VM. The OS Profile that you configure here configures the default for how to manage the OS choices in migration plans.

To set up the OS Profile that plans will use by default, navigate to **Settings > Budget and Costs**, and display the **CLOUD PROFILE** tab. Then make the settings for your OS profile:
The OS Migration Profile determines how Turbonomic will map the OS of each workload as it places that workload on the cloud destination. This includes how to choose VM templates that provide the OS you want, and whether to include the license cost in the Migrate to Cloud plan results. To configure an OS Migration Profile, choose from:

- **Match source OS to target OS**
  
  As you migrate workloads to the cloud, keep the same OS. As Turbonomic calculates placement for the migrated workloads, it will only use templates that provide the same OS that the workload already has. This is important if your workloads host applications that depend on a specific OS.

- **BYOL (Bring your own license)**
  
  The same as **Match source OS to target OS**, except the plan does not include OS licensing costs in any of the cost calculations for on-cloud placement.

- **Custom OS**
  
  For each of the listed OS types, map the migrated VM to the OS you choose. The OS types are:
  - Linux – Any open source distribution of Linux. For the migration, Turbonomic will choose templates that provide the Linux platform that the cloud service provider delivers as a free platform. Note that this is always BYOL, because it assumes a free OS license.
  - RHEL – Red Hat Enterprise Linux.
  - SLES – SUSE Linux Enterprise Server.
  - Windows – Microsoft Windows.

  For each mapping, enable or disable **BYOL (Bring Your Own License)**. When you enable this, Turbonomic assumes that you are paying for the OS license, and will not include the license cost in the plan results. If you do not enable BYOL, then Turbonomic gets the license cost from the service provider and includes that cost in the plan results.

When you are satisfied with your changes, click **APPLY SETTINGS**. Or to reset the form, click **RESET DEFAULTS**.
Hardware Costs

As it generates reports and plans, Turbonomic can show estimated savings and costs for changes in the hosts and storage in your environment. To calculate these values, Turbonomic uses the prices you set up for Hardware Costs. Turbonomic uses the costs you set up here to estimate investments or savings for changes to hardware in your environment. For plans, if the plan uses templates and you have assigned prices to them, then Turbonomic uses those values. Otherwise, the plan uses the values that you set up here.

To specify Hardware Costs, navigate to Settings > Budget and Costs, and display the HARDWARE COSTS tab. Then make the settings for different hardware resources:

• HOST HARDWARE COST
  The cost for an average physical host machine in your environment.

• COST OF CPU PER UNIT
  The average cost of each CPU socket in your hosts.

• COST OF MEMORY PER GB
  The average cost of memory for your hosts, per GB.

• COST OF STORAGE PER TB
  The average cost of storage capacity for disk storage, per TB.

When you are satisfied with your changes, click APPLY SETTINGS. Or to reset the form, click RESET DEFAULTS.

Azure Rate Cards

For Azure environments, Turbonomic uses the published Microsoft rates to calculate costs for templates and services in the cloud. However, your environment can run workloads on an Azure environment that is managed by a specific Cloud Solution Provider (CSP). That CSP can offer its own price list for the Azure services. In that case, you can upload the CSP price list, and configure Turbonomic to use those rates for the affected Azure subscriptions.
Turbonomic ships with a sample rate card that you can use to set up and test the Rate Card calculations for a subscription.

To use a Rate Card, you must have an Azure subscription configured as a Turbonomic target. You can then assign the Rate Card to that subscription.

**NOTE:**

Rate Cards do not include RI pricing data. When you assign a Rate Card to an Azure subscription, Turbonomic assumes on-demand pricing for its workload calculations in that scope.

To use a rate card with a given subscription, you must increase the memory allocated to the VM that hosts your Turbonomic instance. The Installation Guide recommends that you provide a minimum of 16 GB when you install the product. To use rate cards, Turbonomic recommends that you increase the allocated memory as follows:

- For the first rate card assigned to one or more subscriptions, increase by 4 GB.
- For each subsequent rate card assigned to one or more subscriptions, increase by an additional 1 GB.

The **MORE INFO** link at the top of the Rate Card page takes you to the Microsoft page for the "Azure Cloud Solution Provider price list" description. From there, you can see information about the price list format, how to download CSP price lists, and how to use the CSP Pricing Calculator.

If you have a price list file, you can add a Rate Card and assign it to an Azure subscription. For example, assume you have a subscription that is provided by a given CSP. To use that CSP pricing, you would:

- Download the CSP price list onto your local machine
- Add a Rate Card
- Upload the CSP price list file to the Rate Card
- Assign the Rate Card to the associated Azure subscription
  
  Once you assign the Rate Card to the associated Azure subscription, the Rate Card will affect template costs.

### Adding and Editing Rate Cards

To add a Rate Card, you upload the CSP price list to Turbonomic, and then you assign the Rate Card to an Azure subscription. You can always edit a Rate Card to assign it to a different subscription. When editing a Rate Card, you can see whether the price list data is valid, and you can download the pricelist data.

#### Adding a Rate Card

Before you add a Rate Card, you must download the CSP price list from your service provider onto your local machine.

As you add the Rate Card, you will upload that price list to Turbonomic.

To add a Rate Card:

1. Navigate to the Settings Page.
Click to navigate to the Settings Page. From there, you can perform a variety of configuration tasks.

2. Choose Budget and Costs.

Click to navigate to the Budget and Costs page.

3. Display the RATE CARD tab.

Click **RATE CARD** to see all the Rate Cards that have been configured for your environment. In this list you can:
- Click an entry to see details and edit the Rate Card
- Select an entry to delete the Rate Card
- Add new Rate Cards

4. Add a new Rate Card.

First click **NEW RATE CARD**, then specify the following settings:
- Give the Rate Card a name.
- Assign this Rate Card to an Azure subscription.

Note that you can assign the subscription now, or you can edit the Rate Card to assign the subscription at a later date.

Click in the **SUBSCRIPTIONS** field to display the Subscriptions fly-out.
In the Subscriptions fly-out, choose the CSP subscription that offers the billing rates that are specified in the CSP price list you will use.

After you have chosen your subscription, click **SAVE** to return to the New Rate Card fly-out.

- Upload the CSP price list to the Rate Card.

Before adding this Rate Card, you should have already saved the CSP price list to your local machine. Now you can drag that file into the Rate Card fly-out, or browse to the location where you have saved the file.

After you have configured the Rate Card, click **SAVE**.

### Editing a Rate Card

After you have added a Rate Card, you can edit it to change the Azure subscription. To edit a Rate Card, click its entry in the Rate Card list. This opens the Edit Rate Card fly-out, where you can change the subscription setting.

From this fly-out you can also:

- See the status of the Rate Card data
  
  For valid data, the fly-out displays **VALID** in green text.

- Download the CSP price list
  
  Click the **DOWNLOAD** icon to bring the file onto your local machine.

### Price Adjustments

Cloud service providers can offer their own price lists, including special costs for services or discounts for workloads. However, Turbonomic does not discover these adjustments. For example, to reflect any discounted prices in the Turbonomic display and in Turbonomic analysis, you must manually configure those discounts. In Turbonomic, you configure such discounts via **Price Adjustments** for specific billing groups in your cloud environment.

**NOTE:**

For Azure environments, it's possible that you have contracted with a Cloud Solution Provider (CSP). In that case, the CSP might have its own price list. You should not use Price Adjustments to configure such a price list. Instead, use an Azure Rate Card (see *Azure Rate Cards (page 212)*).

Turbonomic applies these price adjustments to:

- Costs for workload template families, including:
  - Compute
  - RI Compute

- Costs for services, including:
  - Azure Active Directory
  - Azure Stack
  - Bandwidth
Setting Up Business Rules

- VM Licenses
- AWS CloudWatch
- AWS DynamoDB
- And others

Note that in AWS environments, Turbonomic does not apply any discounts or other price adjustments to Spot Compute costs.

The general steps to configure a price adjustment are:

- Create the price adjustment:
  - Specify the adjustment scope
    To do this you choose which cloud service provider is giving you the adjustment, and then select one or more billing groups to set the scope of the adjustment.
  - Choose the Override Type
    The price adjustment can be a Discount or an Increase. In most cases you will specify discounts for the price adjustment. While this sets the type for the overall adjustment, you can override the type for specific line items.
  - Specify an Enterprise Override value
    The Enterprise Override is the overall adjustment that your cloud service provider offers for the billing groups in your current scope. For example, AWS might offer you a 10% discount for a given account. For that billing group, you would set a 10% Discount for the Enterprise Override.

- Specify Price Overrides
  While your service provider might offer a general price adjustment for the billing groups you chose, it might also offer further discounts for select services or template families. Or it might offer discounts for some template families, but price increases for some other services. You can configure these differences as Price Overrides.

NOTE:
Turbonomic uses the adjustments that you configure to display costs in the user interface. However, the values for hourly cost per entity, total hourly cost, total monthly cost, or total yearly cost can show inaccuracies on the order of a fraction of a percent. This is due to rounding when calculating the adjusted cost per entity.

Creating a Price Adjustment

A price adjustment configures adjusted workload pricing that you have negotiated with your Cloud Provider. After you configure an adjustment, Turbonomic applies it to pricing in the affected cloud scope.

To create a price adjustment in Turbonomic, you identify the adjustment's scope – the subscriptions or billing families the adjustment applies to – and then set the type and percentage for the Enterprise Override. This specifies an overall adjustment for the workloads that fall within the billing groups. You can later drill into the adjustment to specify overrides for specific template families or services.
NOTE:
To use a price adjustment with a given billing group, you must increase the memory allocated to the VM that hosts your Turbonomic instance. The Installation Guide recommends that you provide a minimum of 16 GB when you install the product. To use price adjustments, Turbonomic recommends that you increase the allocated memory as follows:

- For the first price adjustment assigned to one or more billing groups, increase by 4 GB.
- For each subsequent price adjustment assigned to one or more billing groups, increase by an additional 1 GB.

To create a Price Adjustment:

1. Navigate to the Settings Page.

   ![Settings](image)

   Click to navigate to the Settings Page. From there, you can perform a variety of configuration tasks.

2. Choose Budget and Costs.

   ![Budget and Costs](image)

   Click to navigate to the Budget and Costs page.

3. Display the PRICE ADJUSTMENT tab.

   Click PRICE ADJUSTMENT to see all the adjustments that have been configured for your environment. In this list you can:

   - Click an entry to see details and edit the adjustment
   - Select an entry to delete the adjustment
   - Create new price adjustments

4. Create the price adjustment.
First click **NEW PRICE ADJUSTMENT**, then specify the following settings to configure an Enterprise Override:

- Give the adjustment a name.
- To set the scope for this adjustment, choose its Billing Groups.

Click in the **BILLING GROUPS** field to display the Billing Groups fly-out.

In the Billing Groups fly-out, choose the cloud service provider you want to work with and then select the billing groups for the scope of this adjustment.

A Billing Group is a set of cloud service provider accounts that are consolidated into a single billing schedule. Billing group details depend on your service provider:

- **Azure**: For Azure environments, Turbonomic lists each Azure subscription as a billing group. You can select multiple subscriptions to set the scope of this adjustment.

- **AWS**: To consolidate billing, AWS supports billing families of AWS accounts, where there is a **master** account and other **member** accounts. Turbonomic lists each billing family as a billing group. You can choose a billing family to set the scope of this adjustment.
After you have chosen your billing groups, click **SAVE** to return to the Add New Price Adjustment fly-out.

- Set the Override Type for this price adjustment – Choose either Discount or Increase.
- Specify a percentage of adjustment as the Enterprise Override.

Enter the discount percentage in **ENTERPRISE OVERRIDE**. This is the general percentage of adjustment (increase or discount) for the current scope. For any costs within the adjustment scope, Turbonomic will apply this percentage as it calculates the optimal workload capacity and placement.

**NOTE:**
If you set an overall adjustment of 0%, then Turbonomic enforces an Override Type of Discount. The end result is the same, because an increase or a discount of 0% is the same.

5. Specify any Price Overrides for this price adjustment.

The **ENTERPRISE OVERRIDE** you just specified applies as a default in the adjustment scope. However, you might have negotiated different prices for specific services or template families in your cloud environment. To configure these special prices, click **PRICE OVERRIDES** to open the Cloud Cost Adjustment flyout. The overrides you can specify depend on the cloud service provider that manages the discount scope you have set:

- Azure – See **Price Override: Azure (page 220)**
- AWS – See **Price Override: AWS (page 221)**

6. Save your work.

After you have configured the Price Adjustment, click **SAVE**.
Price Override: Azure

To override the Enterprise Override for Azure billing groups, Turbonomic analysis can use settings for different services that Azure provides to subscriptions.

Assume your Price Adjustment specifies a discount of 10% for an Azure subscription. But then assume the subscription includes extra discounts for some of the services the subscription provides. Then you can create overrides to add the extra discounts for those services.

In the Cloud Cost Adjustment table, you can perform the following:

- Override the price adjustment for a service or template family.
  
  To add an override, choose the line item for a service, or expand the row for a template family and:
  
  - Set the override type. Double-click and then choose Discount or Increase, and then press **Enter** to confirm your setting.
  
  - Enter the percentage for this override, and then press **Enter** to confirm your override. The value you enter here is an absolute value for the discount or increase Turbonomic will apply for this line item.
  
  When you’re done setting these overrides, click **Save**.

- To remove all overrides and revert back to the Enterprise Discount, click **CLEAR ALL OVERRIDES**.

- To download a report of the discounts for each service, click **DOWNLOAD** and choose CSV or PDF.

The table lists the following information about your discounts:

- **SERVICES**
  
  The different cloud services to which you can set an override discount. To see individual workload templates:
  
  - For Azure, expand **Virtual Machines**
Setting Up Business Rules

- For AWS, expand **AWS EC2 Compute** or **EC2 Reserved Instance**

  - **OVERRIDE TYPE**
    Whether this price adjustment will be an increase or a discount. By default, this field shows the setting that you have made for the Enterprise Override. However, you can change it as an override for an individual entry.

  - **ENT. OVERRIDE %**
    The Enterprise Override that you have set for the Price Adjustment. This is the general adjustment that Turbonomic applies by default to the given service.

  - **OVERRIDE %**
    If you have entered a value, this is the price adjustment Turbonomic applies to the given service.

  - **CSP COST (LINUX)**
    The Cloud Service Provider's cost for VM templates, per hour. To see these costs, expand the workload services to show specific templates. The cost assumes no charge for the OS license, as though the VM runs Linux.

  - **EFFECTIVE OVERRIDE %**
    The actual adjustment for the given service.

  - **EFFECTIVE COST (LINUX)**
    The discounted cost for VM templates, per hour. To see these costs, expand **Virtual Machines** to show specific templates. The cost assumes no charge for the OS license, as though the VM runs Linux.

**Price Override: AWS**

To override the Enterprise Override for AWS billing groups, Turbonomic analysis can use settings for different services that AWS provides to your accounts.

In AWS you can set up a billing family that includes a **master** account and a given set of **member** accounts. Turbonomic treats the AWS billing family as a Billing Group. For more information about billing families, see [AWS Billing Family Recognition (page 203)](#).
Assume you have configured an Price Adjustment with a discount of 10% for a billing family, to match the overall discount that AWS offers you for that scope. But then assume the account includes extra discounts for some of the services your billing families provide. Then you can create overrides to add the extra discounts to those services.

Turbonomic uses the adjusted costs in its analysis as it calculates actions. For example, assume an Enterprise Discount of 10% for a billing group, and a discount of 20% for the M4.Large family of templates. As Turbonomic places a workload, it will consider both the template capacity and the template cost. Even if an M4 template is larger than the workload actually needs, the M4 template could be less expensive because of the added discount. In that case, Turbonomic will place the workload on the less expensive template.

**NOTE:**
The Cloud Cost Adjustment table lists the services that are available to you for the AWS billing family that you have set up as the discount scope. The services this table displays depend on whether the billing family uses the given service, and whether there is any recorded cost at the time that you display the table. For this reason, under some circumstances you might see different services listed in the table.

Under all circumstances, the table lists the services, AWS EC2 Compute, AWS EC2 Reserved Instance, and AWS RDS. Also, for the Cloud Cost Adjustment table to display CSP Cost and Effective Cost, you must have created a Cost and Usage report in AWS, and you must store it in an S3 bucket.

For more information, see [Displaying AWS Spend In Turbonomic](#).

In the Cloud Cost Adjustment table, you can perform the following:

- **Override the price adjustment for a service or template family.**
  
  To add an override, choose the line item for a service, or expand the row for a template family and:
  
  - Set the override type. Double-click and then choose Discount or Increase, and then press Enter to confirm your setting.
  
  - Enter the percentage for this override, and then press Enter to confirm your override. The value you enter here is an absolute value for the discount or increase Turbonomic will apply for this line item.

  When you’re done setting these overrides, click **Save**.

- **To remove all overrides and revert back to the Enterprise Discount**, click **CLEAR ALL OVERRIDES**.

- **To download a report of the discounts for each service**, click **DOWNLOAD** and choose CSV or PDF.

The table lists the following information about your discounts:

- **SERVICES**
  
  The different cloud services to which you can set an override discount. To see individual workload templates:

  - For Azure, expand **Virtual Machines**
  
  - For AWS, expand **AWS EC2 Compute** or **EC2 Reserved Instance**

- **OVERRIDE TYPE**
  
  Whether this price adjustment will be an increase or a discount. By default, this field shows the setting that you have made for the Enterprise Override. However, you can change it as an override for an individual entry.

- **ENT. OVERRIDE %**
The Enterprise Override that you have set for the Price Adjustment. This is the general adjustment that Turbonomic applies by default to the given service.

- OVERRIDE %
  If you have entered a value, this is the price adjustment Turbonomic applies to the given service.

- CSP COST (LINUX)
  The Cloud Service Provider's cost for VM templates, per hour. To see these costs, expand the workload services to show specific templates. The cost assumes no charge for the OS license, as though the VM runs Linux.

- EFFECTIVE OVERRIDE %
  The actual adjustment for the given service.

- EFFECTIVE COST (LINUX)
  The discounted cost for VM templates, per hour. To see these costs, expand Virtual Machines to show specific templates. The cost assumes no charge for the OS license, as though the VM runs Linux.

Setting Policies

Policies set business rules to control how Turbonomic analyzes resource allocation, how it displays resource status, and how it recommends or executes actions. You can work with two kinds of policies:

- Placement Policies
To modify workload placement decisions, Turbonomic divides its market into segments that constrain the valid placement of workloads. Turbonomic discovers placement rules that are defined by the targets in your environment, and you can create your own segments.

- **Automation Policies**
  Turbonomic ships with default settings that we believe will give you the best results from our analysis and control. But for some scopes of your environment, you might want to change these settings. For example, you might want to change action automation for that scope, or change the utilization constraints.

The Policy Management page shows all the currently defined policies. You can:

- Select an entry to delete the policy
- Click an entry name to edit the policy

You can enable or disable discovered placement policies. For a Turbonomic segment (a placement policy that was created in Turbonomic), you can edit the policy definition as well as enable/disable it.

- Create new policies

To see the policies that are applied to a scope, go to the Search page and set the Turbonomic session to that scope. Then show the Policy view. For more information, see [Scope Policies](#).

**Things You Can Do**

- Manage Imported Placement Policies – [Importing Workload Placement Policies](#)
- Create a Placement Policy – [Creating Placement Policies](#)
- Create an Automation Policy – [Automation Policies](#)
- Create an Orchestration Policy – [Setting Up Action Orchestration](#)

**Placement Policies**

For planning and optimization, Turbonomic recommends actions to place workload from applications, VMs, physical machines, datastores, and disk arrays. Turbonomic can recommend these actions, or execute them automatically. When calculating workload placement, Turbonomic respects cluster boundaries, networks, and provisioned data stores. These boundaries impose segments on the market view that Turbonomic uses to model your virtual infrastructure.

In finance a market segment divides the market according to the criteria different groups of people use when they buy or sell goods and services. Likewise in the Turbonomic market, a workload placement segment uses criteria to focus the buying and selling of resources within specific groups of entities. It gives you finer control over how Turbonomic calculates moves. When managing segments you can:

- **Work with Imported Placement Policies** — Review the placement policies that Turbonomic has discovered. These are policies that have been defined in your environment, outside of Turbonomic.
- **Create Placement Segments** — that restrict workload placement according to specific rules

**NOTE:**

You can enable or disable any imported policy or created workload placement segment.
Importing Workload Placement Policies

The hypervisors that you set as targets can include placement policies of their own. Turbonomic imports these placement policies, and you can choose to enable or disable them as you wish. By default, Turbonomic enables imported placement policies.

Turbonomic imports:

- vCenter Server DRS Rules
- Virtual Machine Manager Availability Sets
- CloudStack Affinity Groups

**NOTE:**
In vCenter environments, Turbonomic does not import DRS rules if DRS is disabled on the hypervisor. Further, if Turbonomic did import an enabled DRS rule, that somebody subsequently disables that DRS rule, then Turbonomic will discover that the rule was disabled and will remove the imported placement policy.

For more information about these imported rules, see the Target Configuration Guide.

Creating Placement Policies

Placement Policies set up constraints to affect how Turbonomic calculates the placement of workloads in your environment. In this way, you can direct Turbonomic to recommend actions that satisfy business rules for your enterprise.

Turbonomic discovers Placement policies that have been defined in your environment, and you can also create Placement policies through the Turbonomic user interface. Note that you can enable or disable any Placement policy, both for real-time analysis and for planning scenarios.

Turbonomic supports the following placement policies:

- **Place** — Determine which entities use specific providers
  
  For example, the VMs in a consumer group can only run on a PM that is in the provider group. You can limit the number of consumers that can run on a single provider — for PMs in the provider group, only 2 instances of VMs in the consumer group can run on the same host. Or no more than the specified number of VMs can use the same storage device.

- **Don't Place** — Consumers must never run on specific providers
  
  For example, the VMs in a consumer group can never run on a PM that is in the provider group. You can use such a segment to reserve specialized hardware for certain workloads.

- **Merge** — Merge clusters into a single provider group
  
  For example, you can merge three PM clusters in a single provider group. This enables Turbonomic to move workload from a host in one of the clusters to a host in any of the merged clusters.
• **License** — Set up hosts with paid licenses to be the preferred providers for VMs or applications that require those licenses.

If you purchase licenses for hosts to run specific software, you want to place as many licensed VMs or applications on a licensed host as possible. A license segment identifies a group of host machines that provide a given license, and a group of VMs or applications that consume that license. When Turbonomic calculates workload placement, it will avoid moving the VMs to hosts that don’t provide the license, and will try to consolidate workload on as few licensed hosts as possible.

1. **Navigate to the Settings Page.**

   ![Settings](SETTINGS)

   Click to navigate to the Settings Page. From there, you can perform a variety of Turbonomic configuration tasks.

2. **Choose Policies.**

   ![Policies](POLICIES)

   Click to navigate to the Policy Management Page.

   This page lists all the policies that you currently have configured for Turbonomic.

3. **Create a new Placement policy.**

   ![Create a new policy](NEW_POLICY)

   First, select the type of Placement policy to create, then specify the settings:
   • Give the policy a name
   • Choose the policy type and make the settings
• Save the policy when you're done

4. Create a **Place** policy.

   POLICY NAME

   TYPE
   ![Place Options](Image)

   PLACE
   Choose consumer type... *( ) SELECT GROUP

   ON
   Choose provider type... *( ) SELECT GROUP

   - Limit workload entities to placement group
   - Limit the maximum number of workload entities per placement entity to

These policies control where workload can be placed. For example, you can specify that a VM will only be placed on a PM that is a member of a specific cluster. Or you could specify that any applications in a specific group can only be placed on a datastore that is a member of a specific group.

   • **Specify the consumer group** — The group or cluster of entities that will be placed on the identified providers
   • **Specify the provider group** — The group or cluster of entities that will provide resources to the consumers
   • **Limit workload entities to placement group** — Set the policy to only place consumer entities on members of the provider group
   • **Limit the maximum number of workload entities per placement entity to** — Limit how many instances of the consumer entities can be placed on a single provider

5. Create a **Don't Place** policy.

   POLICY NAME

   TYPE
   ![Don't Place Options](Image)

   DON'T PLACE
   Choose consumer type... *( ) SELECT GROUP

   ON
   Choose provider type... *( ) SELECT GROUP

These policies identify groups or clusters that will never host the consumer entities. For example, you can specify that a VM will never be placed on a PM that is a member of a specific cluster. Or you can specify that a set of
non-critical applications will never be placed on specialized hardware, as a way to ensure availability for critical applications.

- **Specify the consumer group** — The group or cluster of entities that will be excluded from the identified providers
- **Specify the provider group** — The group or cluster of entities that will not provide resources to the consumers

6. Create a **Merge** policy.

   - To remove cluster boundaries you can create Merge policies. These policies merge multiple clusters into a single logical group for the purpose of workload placement. For example, your environment might divide hosts into clusters according to hardware vendor, or by some other criteria. Workload placement typically does not cross such cluster boundaries. However, there might be no technical reason to apply these boundaries to workload placement. By creating a larger pool of provider resources, Turbonomic has even more opportunities to increase efficiency in your environment.

   For merge policies, keep the following considerations in mind:
   - For most policies that merge host and storage clusters, the clusters you place in the Merge segment must be members of the same datacenter.
   - For vCenter environments, use Merge policies to support cross-vCenter moves. In this case, where a datacenter corresponds to a given vCenter target, the merged clusters can be in different datacenters. In this case you must create two merge policies: one to merge the affected datacenters, and another to merge the specific clusters.
     - Also note that the clusters you merge must use the same network names on their respective datacenters.
   - For cloud environments, you can create policies to merge datacenters. Use these merge policies to support Migrate to Cloud plans or to support VM moves that find better costs on other zones.

   To create a Merge policy, choose the type of entity to merge, and then select the groups you will merge.

7. Create a **License** policy.
Setting Up Business Rules

These policies keep VMs and applications that use a specific license running on the hosts that provide that specific license. For example, assume you have purchased a number of licenses for a database — You pay for the right to run that database on a certain number of host sockets. In that case, it’s most advantageous to do two things:

• Only place the associated workload on hosts that have the license assigned to them
• Consolidate workload on those hosts as much as possible, in case you can suspend a host and save on licensing cost

In the Turbonomic market, consumers purchase resources from providers. In a license policy, the consumers get a reduced price for resources from the hosts in the Provider Group. The result is that the workload will have strong tendency to be placed on these hosts. This helps to meet the goal of consolidating the workload on the licensed hosts. However, if the licensed hosts don’t have enough capacity, then the workload can be placed on other hosts. In that case, Turbonomic will also recommend provisioning a new licensed host.

To create a License policy:

• Specify the consumer group — The group or cluster of entities that get priority to run on the providers
• Specify the provider group — The group or cluster of hosts that are to give priority to the identified consumers

When you have made all your settings, be sure to save the Policy.

Automation Policies

As Turbonomic gathers metrics, it compares the metric values against specified constraint and capacity settings to determine whether a metric exhibits a problem, and what actions to recommend or execute to avoid a problem. With these policies you can set:

• Action Automation — Whether to execute automatically or manually, or whether to just recommend the action
• Action Orchestration — Whether to have Turbonomic execute the action, have Turbonomic direct an orchestrator to execute the action, or execute the action with Action Scripts
• Analysis Settings – Settings that affect the Turbonomic analysis of the state of your environment. These include:
  ◦ Operational Constraints such as setting minimum and maximum sizes for scaling vMem or vCPU on a VM
  ◦ Utilization Constraints such as memory or CPU utilization
  ◦ Resize Increments
Setting Up Business Rules

- **Application Priority**

You assign an Automation Policy to a scope in your environment. For example, you might want to automate all VM moves and resizes in a development cluster. With these policies you can introduce automation of actions in a controlled way, for specific scopes of entities in your environment.

### About Policy Scope

Policy scope determines which entities will be affected by the settings you make. To set scope, you assign one or more groups to the policy. (For information about creating groups, see [Creating Groups](page 206).)

It's possible to set up policies with conflicts on individual entities. Assume two groups, Group_A and Group_B. Now imagine that one host is a member of both groups. For example, the host cluster is one group, and you might have included the host in a custom group. What happens if you create two different Automation Policies, one for Group_A and another for Group_B? In that case, the host can have different policy settings.

For example, the Group_A policy could set the Suspend action to Manual, while the default for Group_B is Recommend. Note that Turbonomic always uses the most conservative setting. For this case, the Recommend setting is most conservative, so it wins.

### About Policy Schedules

You can set a schedule for an automation policy. The schedule acts as a *window* of time. When that window is open, the scheduled policy takes effect. A typical use for scheduling policies is to automate disruptive actions during a period of low activity.

**NOTE:** Turbonomic continually calculates actions that cause your environment to converge on the desired state. These actions are in response to the environment at a given point in time. When you restrict the automation of a given action to a certain time window, Turbonomic will only calculate and perform actions that are appropriate for the environment during that scheduled window.

For example, assume you want to always automate Resize actions for all but the most critical VMs. You would set Resize VMs to *Automated* at a global level. Then for a critical cluster, you could set a restriction window that overrides the automation (sets Resize to Manual) during peak hours (9:00 to 5:00 M-F).

You can also restrict action modes in reverse fashion. For example, if you want to automate Resize for only one set of VMs, you can set Resize to *Manual* at the global level, and for one cluster schedule it to be *Automated* for a given time window.

**NOTE:** For VM policies you can enable *Enforce Nondisruptive Mode*, and then schedule action windows to automate resize actions during downtimes. Be aware that scheduled actions do not respect the enforced nondisruptive mode — Scheduled resize actions will execute during the scheduled window even if they require a reboot. This is useful for setting up certain action behaviors, but you must be aware that enforced non disruptive mode has no effect on scheduled actions. For information about Nondisruptive mode, see [Enforce Non Disruptive Mode](page 236).
Creating an Automation Policy

To create a policy:

1. **Navigate to the Settings Page.**

   ![SETTINGS]

   Click to navigate to the Settings Page. From there, you can perform a variety of Turbonomic configuration tasks.

2. **Choose Policies.**

   ![Policies]

   Click to navigate to the Policy Management Page.

   This page lists all the policies that you currently have configured for Turbonomic.

3. **Create a new automation policy.**

   ![AUTOMATION POLICY]

   The first step is to select the policy type. This sets the type of entity that your policy will affect. Note that Turbonomic supports different actions for different types of entities. For example, you cannot add VMem to a storage device. Setting policy type is the first step you take to focus on which actions you want to map to your workflows.

4. **Name the policy.**
Once you have chosen the policy type, you can make all your policy settings. Start by giving the policy a useful name.

5. Set the policy scope.

   Expand the **SCOPE** section and choose one or more groups to set as the policy’s scope. You can choose from groups of entities that match the type of entity you have set for the policy. You can also create new groups and add them to the policy scope.

   **NOTE:**
   In Turbonomic you can find nested groups (groups of groups). For example, the "By PM Cluster" group contains host clusters, and each host cluster is a group. Do not set the policy scope to a parent of nested groups. When setting up policies, be sure you set them to individual groups. If necessary, create a custom group for the settings you want to apply.

The scope determines which entities this policy will affect. Click **SCOPE** to expand the section, and then add one or more groups. When you click **ADD GROUPS**, Turbonomic displays a list of all the groups of entities that match the policy type. You can also create new groups if necessary.
NOTE:
A single entity can be a member of multiple groups. This can result in a conflict of settings, where the same entity can have different Action Policy settings. For more information, see Setting Policies (page 223).

6. Optionally, set a schedule for the policy.

Expand the SCHEDULE section and specify the schedule parameters.

The schedule’s date range determines how many days the window will be “open”, or be in effect. You should keep the following points in mind:

- A non-recurring window has a start date, and no end date. The window will be open for the day you specify as the start date, and finish at the end of that day.
- If you don’t want an end date for the schedule, turn on the Perpetual option.
- For recurring windows you specify a date range. The window will open during times within that range.
- For daily recurrence the window will be open for the hours you specify.
- For weekly recurrence the window will be open on the days of the week that you specify, for the hours you specify.
- For monthly recurrence, the window will open one day each month — on the day you set for the Start Date. But the window recurrence remains in effect until the End Date. For example, if you specify January 1st 2013 for the start date, and December 31st 2013 for the end date, the window will be open on the first day of each month for that year.
Now that you have named the policy and set its scope, you can make the settings that affect Turbonomic analysis and action recommendations. The settings you can make are:

- Action modes – see Setting Action Modes (page 234)
- Action orchestration – see Setting Up Action Orchestration (page 248)
- Analysis settings – see Analysis Settings (page 253)

Setting Action Modes

To avoid problems in your environment, Turbonomic analysis identifies actions that you can execute to keep things in optimal running order. Action modes specify the degree of automation you want for these given actions. For example, in some environments you might not want to automate resize down of VMs because that is a disruptive action. You would use action modes in a policy to set that business rule.

Turbonomic supports the following action modes:

- **Disabled** — Do not recommend or perform the action
  
  When you disable an action, the user interface hides all of the action modes.

- **Recommended** — Recommend the action so a user can execute it via the given hypervisor or by other means

- **Manual** — Recommend the action, and provide the option to execute that action through the Turbonomic user interface

- **Automated** — You have directed Turbonomic to execute the action automatically

To get the best results from Turbonomic’s Intelligent Workload Management, you should set as many actions as possible to **Automated**. If some clusters run applications that are highly critical, you can set them to **Manual**.

The available action modes are different for different types of entities, and for different targets that manage these entities. For a listing of the action modes that you can use for each type, see Action Modes (page 238).

**NOTE:**

Turbonomic policies include Action Orchestration settings. These settings determine whether Turbonomic executes the actions, or whether to map the actions to workflows managed by external orchestrators. If you want to execute via an orchestrator workflow, you must set the action mode to Manual or Automated. For more information about action orchestration, see Setting Up Action Orchestration (page 248).

Tuned Scaling Action Settings

For resizing VMs and Storage, Turbonomic includes tuned scaling action settings. These settings give you increased control over the action mode for the affected actions. With this feature you can rely on automation for resize actions within a normal range (the tuned scaling range), and direct Turbonomic to post more conservative actions when the issue lies outside of the scaling range.

For example, consider adding memory to VMs. As memory demand increases on a VM, Turbonomic can automatically allocate more memory. But what if the hosted application is in a runaway state, and will always request more memory? How can automated actions know when to stop in a runaway situation?
With tuned scaling actions, you set up a scaling range for action automation. For conditions that fall outside of the range, you set up more conservative action modes (Manual or Recommend). Following our example, the runaway application ultimately falls outside of the normal range, and Turbonomic will not automate memory resize for the VM.

You can set up tuned scaling actions for the following entities. Note that Resize Up and Resize Down settings are for conditions within the tuned scaling range, while Above Max and Below Min settings are for outlying conditions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity Type:</th>
<th>Action Settings:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VM</td>
<td>• VCPU Resize Up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• VCPU Resize Down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• VCPU Resize Above Max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• VCPU Resize Below Min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• VMEM Resize Up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• VMEM Resize Down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• VMEM Resize Above Max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• VMEM Resize Below Min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage</td>
<td>• Storage Resize Up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Storage Resize Down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Storage Resize Above Max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Storage Resize Below Min</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To define the range, you specify the tuned scaling range as an Operational Constraint for the VM or Storage policy that you're creating.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity Type:</th>
<th>Operational Constraints:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VM tuned scaling range</td>
<td>• VCPU Max Resize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• VCPU Min Resize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• VMEM Max Resize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• VMEM Min Resize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage tuned scaling range</td>
<td>• Storage Max Resize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Storage Min Resize</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For example, assume the following settings:

- VCPU Min Size: 2
- VCPU Max Size: 8
- VCPU Resize Up: Automated
- VCPU Resize Down: Manual
- VCPU Resize Above Max: Manual
- VCPU Resize Below Min: Disabled

With this policy in effect, Turbonomic will post the following actions:

- A VM with 6 VCPUs requests 2 new VCPUs: Automated
- A VM with 8 VCPUs requests 2 new VCPUs: Manual
- A VM with 2 VCPUs requests to resize down to 1 VCPU: Disabled (Turbonomic does not post the action)

Action policies include scope to determine which entities will be affected by the given policy. It’s possible for two or more policies to affect the same entities. As is true for other policy settings, tuned scaling uses the most conservative settings for the affected entities. The effective action mode will be the most conservative, and the effective tuned scaling range will be the narrowest range (the lowest MAX and highest MIN) out of the multiple policies that affect the given entities. For more information, see About Policy Scope (page 230).

You can schedule automation policies to take effect during a certain window of time. You can include tuned scaling settings in a scheduled window, the same as you can schedule other policy settings. For more information, see About Policy Schedules (page 230).

**Enforce Non Disruptive Mode**

VM actions include the modifier, **Enforce Non Disruptive Mode**. When you enable this modifier, Turbonomic ensures that for Automated and Manual modes any resize actions that can be executed will not require a reboot or any other disruption to the affected VM. If the action will disrupt the VM, Turbonomic posts the action in Recommended mode. If it will not cause any disruption, then Turbonomic can post it as Automated or Manual.

For example, with VMware technologies you must have VMware Tools installed to enable hot resize of a VM. Assume you have VMware Tools installed on the guest OS for VM-A, but not for VM-B, and you have set **Resize up** to Automated for the cluster:

- If you enable this modifier for VM actions:
  - Turbonomic will automate resize actions for VM-A, but will only recommend resize actions for VM-B.
- If you do **not** enable this modifier for VM actions:
  - Turbonomic will automate resize actions for VM-A and VM-B.

Another disruptive action is resizing up to more than 4 vCPUs on Windows 2008 and Windows 2008 R2 systems. Even if Hot Add is enabled for the system, Turbonomic considers such a resize to be disruptive.
If you have set the actions to Manual, the effect is the same — Turbonomic will post the manual actions to the To Do list only if they are not disruptive to the VM’s operation. Otherwise the actions will be Recommended. Enforcing non disruptive mode is a way to safely automate resize actions for VMs.

In addition to the **Enforce Non Disruptive Mode** setting, Turbonomic automatically discovers the VMs that support Hot Add of CPU and Memory, and places these VMs in groups. You can use these groups the same as you would any other groups.

In SEARCH, find groups that support Non Disruptive mode or Hot Add

Non Disruptive Groups — Find these groups in the SEARCH view

You can enforce non disruptive mode in the default VM policy, and then schedule action policies to automate resize actions during downtimes. Be aware that scheduled actions do not respect the enforced non disruptive mode — Scheduled resize actions will execute during the scheduled window even if they require a reboot. This is useful for setting up certain action behaviors, but you must be aware that enforced non disruptive mode has no effect on scheduled actions.

**Set Action Modes**

After you have specified the policy's entity type, name, and scope, you can specify action modes. To set action modes:

1. Set the action mode for the actions this policy affects.
Click **ACTION MODE** to expand the section, and then set up one or more actions. When you click **ADD ACTIONS**, Turbonomic displays a list of all the actions that are viable for the policy type. Choose an action and then set the action mode. You can set the mode for one or more actions.

The action modes you can set are:

- **Disabled** — Do not recommend or perform the action
  When you disable an action, the user interface hides all of the action modes.

- **Recommended** — Recommend the action so a user can execute it via the given hypervisor or by other means

- **Manual** — Recommend the action, and provide the option to execute that action through the Turbonomic user interface

- **Automated** — You have directed Turbonomic to execute the action automatically

2. When you have made all your settings, be sure to save the Automation Policy.

**Action Modes**

Turbonomic doesn’t automate the same actions equally for all technologies. This is because the underlying technologies do not provide the same degree of automation. For example, assume you set the Storage Move actions to be automated for all VMs. In that case, Turbonomic can automate storage moves for VMs managed by vCenter and RHEV, but it cannot automatically execute storage moves for VMs managed by Hyper-V or XenServer. This is because Hyper-V and XenServer do not provide programmatic access to the Storage Move operation. In this case, Turbonomic will recommend that you perform the storage move using the Hyper-V or XenServer console.

The following table lists actions Turbonomic supports on each entity, showing whether the underlying technology supports automation, or recommended-only actions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>WebSphere</th>
<th>WebLogic</th>
<th>JBoss</th>
<th>Tomcat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Start</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provision — VMware, only</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Setting Up Business Rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>WebSphere</th>
<th>WebLogic</th>
<th>JBoss</th>
<th>Tomcat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Provision — Other hypervisors</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suspend (public cloud, only)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resize down (heap)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resize down (threads)</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resize up (heap)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resize up (threads)</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Database Servers

Turbonomic performs the following actions for database servers. Also note, while Turbonomic does not automate actions directly on the database, it does automate actions on the underlying VM.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Oracle</th>
<th>SQLServer</th>
<th>MySQL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Resize down (transaction log)</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resize down (MEM and connections capacity)</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resize up (transaction log)</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resize up (MEM and connections capacity)</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Databases on the public cloud:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>AWS</th>
<th>Azure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Resize down</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Microsoft Applications

Turbonomic performs the following actions for Microsoft applications. For on-prem Microsoft applications, remember that if the Scaling Policy is set to Provision, Turbonomic will not recommend resize actions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Exchange</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Start</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provision</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suspend (public cloud, only)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resize down (heap)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resize down</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resize up (heap)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resize up</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### VM Actions

For on-prem VMs, Turbonomic supports the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>vCenter</th>
<th>XenServer</th>
<th>Hyper-V</th>
<th>RHEV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Start</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suspend (public cloud, only)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>vCenter</td>
<td>XenServer</td>
<td>Hyper-V</td>
<td>RHEV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminate (Remove)</td>
<td>Run</td>
<td>Run</td>
<td>Run</td>
<td>Run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provision</td>
<td>Run</td>
<td>Run</td>
<td>Run</td>
<td>Run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Move</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Run</td>
<td>Run</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reconfigure (Change network and storage configurations)</td>
<td>Run</td>
<td>Run</td>
<td>Run</td>
<td>Run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCPU Resize Up (uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCPU Resize Down (uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCPU Resize Above Max (uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCPU Resize Below Min (uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMEM Resize Up (uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMEM Resize Down (uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMEM Resize Above Max (uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMEM Resize Below Min (uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enforce Non Disruptive Mode</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Actions for VMs on the public cloud:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>AWS</th>
<th>Azure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Purchase RI capacity</td>
<td></td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suspend</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCPU Resize Up (uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCPU Resize Down (uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCPU Resize Above Max (uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCPU Resize Below Min (uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMEM Resize Up (uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMEM Resize Down (uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMEM Resize Above Max (uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMEM Resize Below Min (uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reconfigure (based on custom policies)</td>
<td>Rond</td>
<td>Rond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move (to a different region)</td>
<td>Rond</td>
<td>Rond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provision</td>
<td>Rond</td>
<td>Rond</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

VMEM and VCPU resize actions use Turbonomic tuned scaling settings. This gives you increased control over the action mode Turbonomic will use for the affected actions. Use VM Operational Constraints to set up the tuned scaling range (see Operational Constraints (page 269)). For an overview of tuned scaling, see Tuned Scaling Action Settings (page 234).
For resize on VMs, actions can change resources in the following ways:

- **Resize resource capacity**
  
  Change the capacity of a resource that is allocated for the VM. For example, a resize action might recommend increasing the VMem available to a VM.

- **Resize resource reservation**
  
  Change the amount of a resource that is reserved for a VM. For example, a VM could have an excess amount of memory reserved. That can cause memory congestion on the host — A resize action might recommend reducing the amount reserved, freeing up that resource and reducing congestion.

- **Resize resource limit**
  
  Change the limit that is set on the VM for a resource. For example, a VM could have a memory limit set on it. If the VM is experiencing memory shortage, an action that decreases or removes the limit could improve performance on that VM.

**NOTE:**

Actions for on-prem VMs include the modifier, **Enforce Non Disruptive Mode**. When you enable this modifier, Turbonomic ensures that for Automated and Manual modes, any resize actions that can be executed will not require a reboot or any other disruption to the affected VM. If the action will disrupt the VM, Turbonomic posts the action in Recommended mode. If it will not cause any disruption, then Turbonomic can post it as Automated or Manual.

### Host (PM) Actions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>vCenter</th>
<th>XenServer</th>
<th>Hyper-V</th>
<th>RHEV</th>
<th>UCS (blades only)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Start</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Rcnf</td>
<td>Rcnf</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suspend</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Rcnf</td>
<td>Rcnf</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminate</td>
<td>Rcnf</td>
<td>Rcnf</td>
<td>Rcnf</td>
<td>Rcnf</td>
<td>Rcnf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provision</td>
<td>Rcnf</td>
<td>Rcnf</td>
<td>Rcnf</td>
<td>Rcnf</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Storage (Datastore) Actions

Storage actions for environments that do not include Disk Array Storage Controllers as targets:
## Setting Up Business Rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>vCenter</th>
<th>XenServer</th>
<th>Hyper-V</th>
<th>RHEV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Suspend</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provision</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminate</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Resize Up</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Resize Down</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Resize Above</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max (uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Resize Below</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Min (uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Storage actions for datastores on disk arrays:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Dell</th>
<th>Compellent</th>
<th>HP 3Par</th>
<th>NetApp</th>
<th>ONTAP</th>
<th>VNX</th>
<th>VMAX</th>
<th>Nutanix</th>
<th>Pure Storage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Suspend</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provision</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
<td>Rand</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Setting Up Business Rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Dell Compellent</th>
<th>HP 3Par</th>
<th>NetApp ONTAP</th>
<th>VNX</th>
<th>VMAX</th>
<th>Nutanix</th>
<th>Pure Storage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Terminate</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Resize Up (uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Resize Down (uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Resize Above Max (uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Resize Below Min (uses tuned scaling)</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Storage actions for datastores on the public cloud:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th><strong>AWS</strong></th>
<th><strong>Azure</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Move (to a different EBS tier)</td>
<td>Rcmd</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Storage resize actions use Turbonomic tuned scaling settings. This gives you increased control over the action mode Turbonomic will use for the affected actions. Use Storage Operational Constraints to set up the scaling Range (Operational Constraints (page 269)). For an overview of tuned scaling, see Tuned Scaling Action Settings (page 234).
## Disk Array Actions

For environments that have Disk Array Storage Controllers as targets:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Target</th>
<th>Move</th>
<th>Provision</th>
<th>Resize (up)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dell Compellent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HP 3Par</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NetApp ONTAP</td>
<td></td>
<td>![](C-Mode, only)</td>
<td>![](C-Mode, only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMAX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VNX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nutanix</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pure Storage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XTremIO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Storage Controller Actions

Actions for individual Disk Array Storage Controllers:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Target</th>
<th>Provision</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dell Compellent</td>
<td><img src="Rcond" alt="" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HP 3Par</td>
<td><img src="Rcond" alt="" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NetApp ONTAP</td>
<td><img src="Rcond" alt="" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMAX</td>
<td><img src="Rcond" alt="" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VNX</td>
<td><img src="Rcond" alt="" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Setting Up Business Rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Target</th>
<th>Provision</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nutanix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pure Storage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XTremIO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Switch Actions

For environments that have Fabric Managers as targets:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Cisco UCS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Start</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suspend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Virtual Datacenter Actions

For direct actions on VCloud Director and CloudStack virtual datacenters, Turbonomic only supports resize actions. However, Turbonomic does automate actions for the underlying entities (VMs and hosts) that are managed by the virtual datacenter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>VCD</th>
<th>CloudStack</th>
<th>VMM</th>
<th>OpenStack</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Move</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suspend</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminate</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provision</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Setting Up Action Orchestration

Action Orchestration specifies whether Turbonomic will execute an action, or whether Turbonomic will pass the action request to an orchestrator that will execute a complete workflow to effect the change in your environment. In this way, you can integrate supported orchestrators to execute actions for specific scopes of entities in your environment.

### About Orchestrators

Turbonomic supports orchestrator targets. For this release, you can set UCS Director targets to execute actions.

Action Orchestration targets assign workflows that execute multiple actions to make changes in your environment. Turbonomic discovers workflows that you have defined on the orchestrator. You can then set up an automation policy that maps workflows to actions. If the action mode is Manual or Automatic, then when Turbonomic recommends the action, it will direct the orchestrator to use the mapped workflow to execute it.

This section shows how to link orchestration workflows to automation policies. It assumes you have already configured an Orchestration target. It also assumes that you have configured workflows on that target in such a way that Turbonomic can discover the workflows and map them to actions. For information about Orchestration target requirements, see the Target Configuration Guide.

### About Action Scripts

Action Scripts provide a script interface that can add custom processing to Turbonomic actions at the following entry points:

- **Pre**
- **Post**
- **Clear**

You can set up action scripts to run on specific groups of entities. For example, you can enable the PRE-MOVE action script for one group of VMs, and enable the CLEAR-MOVE action script for a different group.

For more information about Action Scripts, see [Creating Action Scripts](#) (page 251).
Specifying Action Orchestration

After you have specified the policy's entity type, name, and scope, you can specify Action Orchestration:

1. For each action you want to execute, set which manager will run the action execution.

   First click **ACTION EXECUTION** to expand the section, and then set up one or more actions. When you click **RUN IN**, Turbonomic displays a list of the supported action managers. For this release, the supported managers are:

   - **Turbonomic — Default**: Use the standard Turbonomic execution for this action. For this choice, you can optionally specify Action Scripts to run for this action.
   - **UCS Director**: Configure Turbonomic to call UCS Director to execute a workflow for this action. For this choice you must also link a UCS Director workflow to this action. Also, you can optionally specify Action Scripts to run for this action.
   - **Action Script**: Direct Turbonomic to bypass action execution and invoke an action script instead. For this choice, you must also specify Action Scripts to run for this action.

   ![Action Orchestration](image)

   **NOTE:**

   To set up action execution, that action's mode must be set to Manual or Automated. Also, you must be sure to match the actions that you have set in the **ACTIONS MODE** section for this scope. For example, if you have set the Suspend action for hosts to Automated, then you can choose that action here to set up **ACTION EXECUTION**.

   For more information about action modes, see [Setting Action Modes](page 234).

2. To execute an action via UCS Director, link a workflow.
In the **ACTION EXECUTION** section, click **LINK WORKFLOW**. Turbonomic displays a list of all the UCS Director workflows that it has discovered in your environment. Choose the workflow that you want to run for this action. Remember, Turbonomic will run that workflow for this action on any of the entities affected by this policy.

**NOTE:**
For any workflow to work with Turbonomic, the workflow's configuration must include specific parameters. This list includes all workflows, whether they have been configured to work with Turbonomic or not. Also, when you choose a workflow, you must be sure it is a reasonable workflow for the policy type. For example, do not link a storage workflow to a host action.

3. Optionally, enable Action Scripts for this action.
Action Scripts provide a script interface that can add custom processing to Turbonomic actions at the following entry points:

- **Pre** — Before executing an action
  
  Example: Send an email to notify that the action has been recommended.

- **Post** — After executing an action
  
  Example: Send an email to notify that the action was executed.

- **Clear** — When the conditions that elicit an action recommendation have changed so that the action is no longer viable
  
  Example: Remove a Provision VM Request from a ticketing system (because the VM is no longer needed).

In the **ACTION EXECUTION** section, click **ACTION SCRIPT** to show options for these entry points. If you enable an entry point, then Turbonomic will execute the script for this action at the indicated entry point.

For more information about Action Scripts, see [Creating Action Scripts](page 251).

4. When you have made all your settings, be sure to save the Action Policy.

## Creating Action Scripts

Action Scripts provide a script interface that can add custom processing to Turbonomic. When you enable an action script to run, you do not provide the script name. Instead, you create one script for each type of action, entity type, and entry point. The script name captures this to specify which action the script responds to, as follows:

<EntryPoint>_<Action>_<EntityType>.sh

The supported entry points, actions, and entity types are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry Point</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Entity Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pre</td>
<td>Move</td>
<td>VirtualApplication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replace (do not specify an entry point in the filename)</td>
<td>Change</td>
<td>Application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reconfigure</td>
<td>VirtualMachine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Setting Up Business Rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry Point</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Entity Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Post</td>
<td>• Resize</td>
<td>• PhysicalMachine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Clear</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Storage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• DiskArray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• StorageController</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• VirtualDatacenter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• DataCenter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some example script names are:

• PRE_MOVE_VirtualMachine.sh
  <Pre><Move><VirtualMachine>
  Execute the script when the move action appears as a recommendation.

• RESIZE_VirtualMachine.sh
  <Replace><Resize><VirtualMachine>
  Execute the script instead of executing the Turbonomic Resize action. Note that you can include a REST API call to accept the action or to reject it as part of the script.

• POST_RECONFIGURE_VirtualMachine.sh
  <Post><Reconfigure><VirtualMachine>
  Execute the script after a Reconfigure action. Note that a POST script executes after an action has succeeded or failed.

• CLEAR_MOVE_VirtualMachine.sh
  <Clear><Move><VirtualMachine>
  Execute the script after a Move action has cleared.

To create an action script, create the file with the appropriate name, and save it on your Turbonomic server at the following location:

/srv/tomcat/script/control

Then implement the script that you want to execute for the given action. For example, you can implement a shell script to run on the Turbonomic server.

To pass information into the script, Turbonomic sets values to environment variables. You can reference these environment variables in your scripts. For example, assume you want to send an email that includes the name of the VM that is an action target. You can get that name via the VMT_TARGET_NAME environment variable.

Turbonomic sets the following environment variables for an action:

• VMT_TARGET_INTERNAL
  The internal name of the entity this action will affect.
• VMT_TARGET_UUID
  The internal name of the entity this action will affect.

• VMT_TARGET_NAME
  The entity's display name.

• VMT_CURRENT_INTERNAL
  The internal name for the current configuration or placement.

• VMT_CURRENT_NAME
  The display name for the current configuration or placement.

• VMT_NEW_INTERNAL
  The internal name for the new configuration or placement.

• VMT_NEW_NAME
  The display name for the new configuration or placement.

• VMT_ACTION_INTERNAL
  The UUID for the proposed action. You can use this to access the action via the REST API.

• VMT_ACTION_NAME
  The name of the action.

• VMT_STATE_NAME
  Gives the state of the action's execution. Can be one of Succeeded or Failed. This variable is only available for POST_ and CLEAR_ action scripts.

• VMT_STATE_DESCRIPTION
  If execution has started, this gives the string, Start execution. This variable is only available for POST_ and CLEAR_ action scripts.

Analysis Settings

Turbonomic collects metrics to drive the analysis that it uses when it calculates actions for your environment. It compares current utilization and demand against allocated capacities for resources, so it can recommend actions that keep your environment in optimal running condition.

Action policies include settings that you can make to adjust the analysis that Turbonomic performs. For example, you can set different levels of overprovisioning for host or VM resources, and Turbonomic will consider that as a factor when deciding on actions.

Turbonomic ships with a set of default analysis settings. These settings take effect until you create and apply a policy with different values for any of the given settings. You can edit the defaults if you want to change analysis settings globally.
The settings you can make are different for different types of entities. The default policies show all the settings you can make for each policy type. For a listing and additional information about these settings, see the following descriptions:

- Analysis Policies: Applications (page 256)
- Analysis Policies: Application Servers (page 257)
- Analysis Policies: Business Applications (page 258)
- Analysis Policies: Containers (page 259)
- Analysis Policies: Databases (page 260)
- Analysis Policies: Database Servers (page 261)
- Analysis Policies: Disk Arrays (page 262)
- Analysis Policies: Hosts (page 263)
- Analysis Policies: Logical Pools (page 265)
- Analysis Policies: Storage Controllers (page 266)
- Analysis Policies: Storage (page 266)
- Analysis Policies: Switches (page 269)
- Analysis Policies: Virtual Applications (page 269)
- Analysis Policies: VMs (page 269)

**Analysis Settings in a Policy**

After you have specified the policy's entity type, name, and scope, you can make analysis settings for the policy. To set make these settings:

1. Click to expand the type of analysis setting you want to make, and add a new setting.
For example, expand **UTILIZATION CONSTRAINTS** and then click **Add Utilization Constraint**. After you click to add the item, you then choose from a list of available settings. Once you add the setting to the policy, you can then change its value. Each setting you add to the policy takes precedence over the default value for that setting.
2. When you have made all your settings, be sure to save the Automation Policy.

Analysis Policies: Applications
Turbonomic tracks utilization of resources for applications and application servers that you have set up as targets.

Default Settings

**APPLICATION SERVER DISCOVERY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Auto Set Transactions Capacity</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connection Capacity</td>
<td>10000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Response Time Capacity [ms]</td>
<td>60000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threads Capacity</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transactions Capacity</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**APPLICATION PRIORITIES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Application Priority</td>
<td>Mission Critical</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Application Priority is a way to enable the suspension of VMs that applications run on. For on-prem environments, Turbonomic does not automate suspend actions for applications. However, for public cloud environments you can enable suspension of VMs. Suspending underutilized VMs on the public cloud is another way that Turbonomic analysis can reduce your cloud expenses. For more information, see [Enabling VM Suspend Actions in the Public Cloud](#page277).

By default, applications are Mission Critical. With this status, Turbonomic will not suspend the VMs that host them. However, you can set an application to a Normal priority. In that case, if there is a shortage of underlying resources, then Turbonomic can suspend the VM that runs that application.

Now assume you have set a cloud application to Normal, and then Turbonomic suspended the underlying VM. If you later decide the application should be Mission Critical, then you can change its priority. After you have changed a suspended application from Normal to Mission Critical, Turbonomic will then start up the suspended VM.
Transactions

This resource measures the number of transactions per second. Excess transactions indicate a heavy load on the application server, and usually means you should provision a new instance. You can set the transaction capacity, or direct Turbonomic to automatically set it.

- **Transaction Capacity**
  
  If you know the rate of transactions your applications can maintain, then you can set it here. The value that you set indicates when Turbonomic considers utilization to be 100%. The default value is 10 — If an application experiences 10 transactions per second or more, Turbonomic sets the utilization index for this resource to 100%.

- **Auto Set Transaction Capacity**
  
  If you enable this setting, Turbonomic adjusts the transaction capacity to the upper limit your application server experiences. For example, if the Transaction Capacity is set to 10, and the application server experiences 15 transactions per second, then the utilization of this resource would be 150%. However, if you enable Auto Set Transaction Capacity, then Turbonomic would increase the capacity to 15, and show utilization at 100%.

Response Time

Response time capacity determines the upper limit for acceptable response time in your applications, in milliseconds. Very high response time can be a result of excess load on the application. For excess response time, Turbonomic can recommend to provision another application instance.

Connection Capacity

Connection capacity determines the upper limit for concurrent connections to the application. Excess connections can indicate the need to provision a new instance.

Threads Capacity

For most types of applications and servers managed by the Application Edition, Turbonomic discovers the thread pool capacity on the server, and uses that in utilization calculations. For this release, the following types of supported application targets do not provide thread pool data that Turbonomic can use:

- Microsoft Exchange Server

For entities of this type, you can select a group of these entities and specify the thread pool capacity. Turbonomic assumes a default capacity of 500 threads, which is according to best practices in the field.

Analysis Policies: Application Servers

Turbonomic tracks utilization of resources for applications and application servers that you have set up as targets.

Default Settings

**UTILIZATION CONSTRAINTS**
Collection Time Utilization and Heap Utilization

For Java applications, Collection Time Utilization tracks the percentage of CPU time spent on garbage collection. The default setting is 10 — if 10% of CPU is devoted to garbage collection, then this resource is utilized at 100%.

Turbonomic tracks this utilization to refine action recommendations in response to Heap utilization. Assume Heap is utilized at 80% of its capacity. This means that Heap Utilization gains a high return (consumers pay a high price for this resource), and that indicates a shortage that can be addressed by provisioning more resources. However, if garbage collection is high, 80% Heap utilization might not indicate a shortage after all. Assume that Collection Time is at 8% of CPU time, which is 80% of its capacity. In that case, both Heap and Collection are at 80%, and the high cost of Collection cancels out the high return for Heap. As a result, Turbonomic will not recommend provisioning more Heap resources.

In the case of highly utilized Heap, if you set the constraint for Collection to a lower number, that tends to suppress recommendations to provision more Heap. On the other hand, setting a high Collection constraint (Garbage Collection can use more CPU cycles) tends to enable more resize up actions for Heap.

Analysis Policies: Business Applications

Turbonomic tracks utilization of resources for applications and application servers that you have set up as targets.

Default Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Auto Set Transactions Capacity</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Response Time Capacity [ms]</td>
<td>60000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transactions Capacity</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Transactions

This resource measures the number of transactions per second. Excess transactions indicate a heavy load on the application server, and usually means you should provision a new instance. You can set the transaction capacity, or direct Turbonomic to automatically set it.

- Transaction Capacity
If you know the rate of transactions your applications can maintain, then you can set it here. The value that you set indicates when Turbonomic considers utilization to be 100%. The default value is 10 — If an application experiences 10 transactions per second or more, Turbonomic sets the utilization index for this resource to 100%.

- Auto Set Transaction Capacity
  
  If you enable this setting, Turbonomic adjusts the transaction capacity to the upper limit your application server experiences. For example, if the Transaction Capacity is set to 10, and the application server experiences 15 transactions per second, then the utilization of this resource would be 150%. However, if you enable Auto Set Transaction Capacity, then Turbonomic would increase the capacity to 15, and show utilization at 100%.

Response Time

Response time capacity determines the upper limit for acceptable response time in your applications, in milliseconds. Very high response time can be a result of excess load on the application. For excess response time, Turbonomic can recommend to provision another application instance.

Analysis Policies: Containers

OPERATIONAL CONSTRAINTS

Default Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Resize Target Utilization</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the public cloud, an advanced setting to determine how much you would like a scope of workloads to utilize their resources. This is a fixed setting that overrides the way Turbonomic calculates the optimal utilization of resources. You should only change this setting after consulting with Technical Support.

Turbonomic uses the Desired State setting to globally set the optimal utilization of resources. By default, this is set to 70%. However, with this setting you can increase target utilization for workloads – for example, 90%. For the scope of the policy, Turbonomic can recommend actions that result in resource utilization as high as 90%. While this setting is one way to modify the how Turbonomic recommends actions, in most cases you should never need to use it. If you want to control how Turbonomic recommends actions to resize workloads, you can set the aggressiveness per the percentile of utilization, and set the length of the sample period for more or less elasticity on the cloud. For more information, see "Aggressiveness" or "Max Observation
Scaling Constraints

Scaling constraints include settings that specify how Turbonomic takes actions to resize a container. The following table shows the default settings for Resize increments:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Increment constant for Container VMEM [MB]</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increment constant for Container VCPU [MHz]</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For resize increments, you should consider the following:

- For VMem, you should not set the increment value to be lower than what is necessary for the container to operate. If the VMem increment is too low, then it’s possible that Turbonomic would allocate insufficient VMem for the machine to operate. For a container that is under utilized, Turbonomic will reduce VMem allocation by the increment amount, but it will not leave a container with zero VMem. For example, if you set this to 64, then Turbonomic cannot reduce the VMem to less than 64 MB.

- For VCPU, the increment affects resize of VCPU limits and reservations in MHz, and it also affects the addition/removal of cores for VCPU capacity on a container.

For limits and reservations, Turbonomic recommends changes in terms of the specified resize increment. For example, assume the increment is 1800 MHz and you have reserved 3000 MHz for a VM. Turbonomic could recommend to reduce the reservation by 1800, down to 1200 MHz.

For VCPUs, Turbonomic can only resize allocation one core at a time. This means a resize is to the nearest core count that matches or exceeds the resize increment. Assume the cores all have a clock speed of 2000 MHz. If the resize increment is 1800 MHz, then a resize up will recommend to add one more core at 2000 MHz.

Analysis Policies: Databases
Analysis Policies: Database Servers

OPERATIONAL CONSTRAINTS

Default Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Resize Target Utilization</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For the public cloud, an advanced setting to determine how much you would like a scope of workloads to utilize their resources. This is a fixed setting that overrides the way Turbonomic calculates the optimal utilization of resources. You should only change this setting after consulting with Technical Support. Turbonomic uses the Desired State setting to globally set the optimal utilization of resources. By default, this is set to 70%. However, with this setting you can increase target utilization for workloads – for example, 90%. For the scope of the policy, Turbonomic can recommend actions that result in resource utilization as high as 90%. While this setting is one way to modify the how Turbonomic recommends actions, in most cases you should never need to use it. If you want to control how Turbonomic recommends actions to resize workloads, you can set the aggressiveness per the percentile of utilization, and set the length of the sample period for more or less elasticity on the cloud. For more information, see &quot;Aggressiveness&quot; or &quot;Max Observation Period&quot; in Analysis Policies: VMs (page 273) or Max Observation Period (page 274).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Setting Up Business Rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>target utilization for workloads – for example, 90%. For the scope of the policy, Turbonomic can recommend actions that result in resource utilization as high as 90%. While this setting is one way to modify the how Turbonomic recommends actions, in most cases you should never need to use it. If you want to control how Turbonomic recommends actions to resize workloads, you can set the aggressiveness per the percentile of utilization, and set the length of the sample period for more or less elasticity on the cloud. For more information, see &quot;Aggressiveness&quot; or &quot;Max Observation Period&quot; in Analysis Policies: VMs (page 273) or Max Observation Period (page 274).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Analysis Policies: Disk Arrays

Default Settings

STORAGE SETTINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VSeries LUN IOPS Capacity</td>
<td>5000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2k Disk IOPS Capacity</td>
<td>800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10k Disk IOPS Capacity</td>
<td>1200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15k Disk IOPS Capacity</td>
<td>1600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSD Disk IOPS Capacity</td>
<td>50000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disk Array IOPS Capacity</td>
<td>10000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DiskArray Overprovisioned Percentage</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DiskArray Provisioned

How much overprovisioning Turbonomic assumes when recommending actions for disk arrays. For example, if a disk array has a 30 TB capacity, and DiskArray Overprovisioned Percentage is set to 200, Turbonomic will treat the datastore as though it has a capacity of 60 TB, or 200% of the actual disk array capacity.
IOPS Capacity

The capacity of IOPS (IO operations per second) that your storage devices can support. Turbonomic considers these settings when calculating utilization percentage. For example, assume IOPS Capacity of 5000 for a disk array. If utilization on the array is 2500 IOPS, then the disk array is at 50% of capacity for that metric.

Note that the IOPS setting for an array will determine IOPS calculations for all the storage on that array. If you made different IOPS settings for individual datastores hosted by the array, Turbonomic ignores the datastore settings and uses the disk array settings.

- Various Disk IOPS Capacity settings (SSD Disk IOPS, 7.2k Disk IOPS, etc)
  IOPS capacity settings for the different types of physical drives that are discovered on a disk array. If the storage controller exposes the types of disks in the array, Turbonomic uses multiples of these values to calculate the IOPS capacity of the disk array.

- Disk Array IOPS Capacity
  Some disk arrays do not expose data for their individual disks — This is typical for flash arrays, or arrays that aggregate storage utilization across multiple tiers. Turbonomic uses this setting for the IOPS capacity of such disk arrays. Set it to the global scope to specify IOPS capacity for all disk arrays. To override this setting, set a disk array or group of disk arrays as the property scope, and then set the value you want for IOPS Capacity.

**NOTE:**
The user interface shows a disk array entity for any array that is discovered through a valid disk array or storage controller target. It also shows *placeholder* disk arrays for disk arrays that are not discovered through a configured target. For example, you might have disk arrays that Turbonomic does not natively support. Or you might have storage that is not hosted by any disk array. Such placeholder disk array entities appear with the string "DiskArray-" prefixed to their names. The user interface allows you to set IOPS Capacity to these placeholders, but those settings have no effect. To set IOPS Capacity for that storage, you must set it to the individual datastores.

Analysis Policies: Hosts

**OPERATIONAL CONSTRAINTS**

Default Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ignore High Availability</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Turbonomic discovers and manages HA policies that you have declared in your hypervisor environment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**UTILIZATION CONSTRAINTS**

Default Settings
Setting Up Business Rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CPU Overprovisioned Percentage</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host Memory Utilization</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host Net Throughput</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mem Overprovisioned Percentage</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host Ready Queue Utilization</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host CPU Utilization</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host Swapping Utilization</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host IO Throughput</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Utilization constraints affect the actions Turbonomic recommends as it manages your environment. Turbonomic recommends actions that avoid using these resources beyond the given settings. The values you set here specify what percentage of the existing capacity that Turbonomic will consider to be 100% of capacity. For example:

- Setting 50 for Host Net Throughput means that Turbonomic considers 50% utilization of that throughput to be 100% of capacity and 25% utilization to be 50% of capacity
- Setting 1000 for Mem Overprovisioned Percentage means that overprovisioning memory by 5 times the physical capacity shows up as 50% utilization of the Mem Overprovisioned capacity in Turbonomic
- Setting 100 for Host Memory Utilization means that Turbonomic capacity reflects the physical capacity for this resource

**DESIRED STATE**

**Default Settings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diameter</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The desired state for your environment is an n-dimensional sphere that encompasses the fittest conditions your environment can achieve. The multiple dimensions of this sphere are defined by the resource metrics in your environment. Metric dimensions include VMem, storage, CPU, etc. While the metrics on the devices in your environment can be any value, the desired state, this n-dimensional sphere, is the subset of metric values that assures the best performance while achieving the most efficient utilization of resources that is possible.
The Desired State settings define the center of the sphere as well as its diameter. This is a way for you to customize what Turbonomic considers to be the desired state.

Setting the center of the sphere chooses the priority for Turbonomic analysis. If you set the balance in favor of efficiency, Turbonomic tends to place more VMs on fewer physical hosts, and to give them storage capacity from fewer data stores. As a result, high utilization can have more impact on QoS. With a balance in favor of performance, Turbonomic tends to spread virtual loads across more physical devices. This can result in the provisioning of excess resources.

The diameter setting determines the range of deviation from the center that can encompass the desired state. If you specify a large diameter, Turbonomic will have more variation in the way it distributes workload across hosting devices.

As you move each slider, a tooltip displays the numerical value of the setting. **Center** indicates the percentage of resource utilization you want, within the range you specify as **Diameter**. For example, if you want utilization of 75%, plus or minus 10%, then you would set **Center** = 75 and **Diameter** = 20. Turbonomic recommends actions that tend toward this desired state much as possible, given the dependencies within the current environment.

**NOTE:**
The setting for Target Utilization can have an effect on plans that you run. If you disable provisioning and suspension for hosts and datastores, then you should always set Center and Diameter to their default values.

**INTERNAL TOPOLOGY SETTINGS: HYPER-V**

**Default Settings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of Additional Polling Cycles</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In Hyper-V environments, it is possible that the Hyper-V management software can report that an entity has been removed when in fact it has not been. In that case, Turbonomic can remove the entity from its market representation of your environment, when in fact the entity is still present. With the **Number of Additional Polling Cycles** setting, you can direct Turbonomic to wait a specified number of polling cycles before acknowledging that an entity has been removed.

**NOTE:**
This is a special-case setting, and you should only use it if you are in contact with Turbonomic Support.

**Analysis Policies: Logical Pools**

**Default Settings**

**STORAGE SETTINGS**
## LogicalPool Provisioned

How much overprovisioning Turbonomic assumes when recommending actions for logical pools. For example, if a pool has a 30 TB capacity, and LogicalPool Overprovisioned Percentage is set to 200, Turbonomic will treat the pool as though it has a capacity of 60 TB, or 200% of the actual pool capacity.

## Analysis Policies: Storage Controllers

### Default Settings

### UTILIZATION CONSTRAINTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Storage Controller Storage Amount</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum allowed utilization of storage that is managed by the Storage Controller.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Controller CPU Utilization</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum allowed utilization of Storage Controller CPU (from 20 to 100).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Analysis Policies: Storage

### Operational Constraints

### Default Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Storage Max Size (GB)</td>
<td>20480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tuned Scaling Range Upper Limit:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Turbonomic uses this range to set up tuned scaling actions for the datastore (see Storage Actions [page]).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Setting Up Business Rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Storage Min Size (GB)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tuned Scaling Range Lower Limit:
Turbonomic uses this range to set up tuned scaling Actions for the datastore (see [Storage Actions (page 243)](#)). For an overview of tuned scaling, see [Tuned Scaling Action Settings (page 234)](#).

### UTILIZATION CONSTRAINTS

#### Default Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Storage Amount Utilization</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disk Array Storage Amount Utilization</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage IOPS Utilization</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Latency Utilization</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Utilization constraints affect the actions Turbonomic recommends as it manages your environment. Turbonomic recommends actions that avoid using these resources beyond the given settings. The values you set here specify what percentage of the existing capacity that Turbonomic will consider to be 100% of capacity. For example, setting 90 for Storage Amount Utilization means that Turbonomic considers 90% utilization of the physical storage to be 100% of capacity.

### STORAGE SETTINGS

#### Default Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Directories to Ignore</td>
<td>`.dvsData.*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Files to Ignore</td>
<td>Empty String</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Turbonomic 6.3.13 User Guide
Setting Up Business Rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable Datastore Browsing</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Latency [ms]</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Overprovisioned Percentage</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IOPS Capacity</td>
<td>5000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Storage Overprovisioned Percentage**
  
  Storage Overprovisioned Percentage sets how much overprovisioning Turbonomic assumes when recommending actions for VM datastores. For example, if a datastore has a 30 GB capacity, and Storage Overprovisioned Percentage is set to 200, Turbonomic will treat the datastore as though it has a capacity of 60 GB, or 200% of the actual datastore capacity.

- **IOPS Capacity**
  
  IOPS Capacity is the IOPS setting for individual datastores. To set a specific capacity for one group of datastores, select that group as the property scope and override the global setting for that scope.

  Note that IOPS capacity for a disk array takes precedence — Datastores that are members of a disk array always have the IOPS capacity that is set to the disk array.

  Turbonomic considers these settings when calculating utilization percentage. For example, assume IOPS Capacity of 500 for datastores. If utilization on a datastore is 250 IOPS, then the datastore is at 50% of capacity for that metric.

- **Storage Latency**
  
  This sets the maximum storage latency to tolerate on a datastore, in ms. The default setting is 100 ms.

  Turbonomic measures the latency experienced by all VMs and hosts that access the datastore. Assume a default setting of 100 ms. If a datastore exhibits latency of 50 ms, then the Turbonomic will show latency utilization of 50%.

- **Wasted Storage Management**
  
  You can make settings to control how Turbonomic tracks and reports on wasted storage in your environment. Wasted storage is any disk space devoted to files that are not required for operations of the devices or applications in your environment. Wasted storage may indicate opportunities for you to free up disk space, and provide more storage capacity to running VMs and applications.

  The **Disable Datastore Browsing** setting disables wasted storage management — By default, the global setting is to **Disable** for the entire managed environment (**Disable Datastore Browsing** is ON for the Global scope).

  **NOTE:**

  Disabling datastore browsing only has an effect on on-prem environments. For example, this setting has no effect on the way Turbonomic generates Delete Unattached Volume actions for public cloud environments.

  It’s possible that a single datastore can be managed by more than one instance of vCenter Server. Browsing over such a datastore can result in conflicting values for wasted storage in reports and in the Improve Overall Efficiency dashboard. You should not enable datastore browsing for a scope that includes such a datastore.

  To enable the tracking of wasted storage for the full environment, enable this setting globally.
If there are groups of datastores you don’t want to track for wasted storage, set the given scope and disable datastore browsing there. If you prefer not to use Turbonomic resources to track wasted storage, leave the global setting checked.

The settings for Directories to Ignore and Files to Ignore specify directories and files that Turbonomic will not consider when looking for wasted data storage space. Separate items in these lists with the OR bar (“|”).

Analysis Policies: Switches

Default Settings

**UTILIZATION CONSTRAINTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Switch Net Throughput</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Analysis Policies: Virtual Applications

**LOAD BALANCER SETTINGS**

To manage load balancers, Turbonomic tracks transactions that occur on the virtual applications (vservers) each load balancer manages. You can set the capacity of transactions per second as a policy for virtual applications. Turbonomic will list transaction utilization as a percentage of the capacity you set.

Default Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Virtual Application Transactions Capacity [per sec]</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Analysis Policies: VMs

**OPERATIONAL CONSTRAINTS**

Default Settings
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ignore During VPod Creation</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable High Availability (Workload HA)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This sets the minimum number of VMs to place in a given scope. Ensuring a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>minimum number of VMs in a scope is a way to specify high availability for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the virtual workload in your environment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For a setting of 0, Turbonomic does not enforce a minimum number of workloads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in the given scope.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Geographic Redundancy</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This sets a scale of Geographic Redundancy. On a scale from 0 to 100, this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sets how aggressively Turbonomic will keep workloads in this group on separate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>providers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>With a setting of 100, Turbonomic will always try to place the workloads on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>different providers. With a setting of 0, Turbonomic does not alter its</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>calculations to enforce a separation of workloads on different providers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For a setting of 0, Turbonomic does not enforce separation of workloads on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>different providers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scaling Target CPU Utilization</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For VMs on the public cloud, the target utilization as a percentage of CPU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>capacity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For the public cloud, an advanced setting to determine how much you would</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>like a scope of workloads to utilize their resources. This is a fixed setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>that overrides the way Turbonomic calculates the optimal utilization of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>resources. You should only change this setting after consulting with Technical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Support.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>While this setting is one way to modify the how Turbonomic recommends actions,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in most cases you should never need to use it. If you want to control how</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Turbonomic recommends actions to resize workloads, you can set the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>aggressiveness per the percentile of utilization, and set the length of the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sample period for more or less elasticity on the cloud. For more information,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>see &quot;Aggressiveness&quot; or &quot;Max Observation Period&quot; in Analysis Policies: VMs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(page 273) or Max Observation Period (page 274).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scaling Target MEM Utilization</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Turbonomic, Inc. www.turbonomic.com
### Setting Up Business Rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>For VMs on the public cloud, the target utilization as a percentage of memory capacity. For the public cloud, an advanced setting to determine how much you would like a scope of workloads to utilize their resources. This is a fixed setting that overrides the way Turbonomic calculates the optimal utilization of resources. You should only change this setting after consulting with Technical Support. While this setting is one way to modify the how Turbonomic recommends actions, in most cases you should never need to use it. If you want to control how Turbonomic recommends actions to resize workloads, you can set the aggressiveness per the percentile of utilization, and set the length of the sample period for more or less elasticity on the cloud. For more information, see &quot;Aggressiveness&quot; or &quot;Max Observation Period&quot; in Analysis Policies: VMs (page 273) or Max Observation Period (page 274).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCPU Max Size (CPUs)</td>
<td>62 Tuned Scaling Range Upper Limit: Turbonomic uses this range to set up tuned scaling actions for the VM (see VM Actions (page 240)). For an overview of tuned scaling, see Tuned Scaling Action Settings (page 234).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCPU Min Size (CPUs)</td>
<td>2 Tuned Scaling Range Lower Limit: Turbonomic uses this range to set up tuned scaling actions for the VM (see VM Actions (page 240)). For an overview of tuned scaling, see Tuned Scaling Action Settings (page 234).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMEM Max Size (MB)</td>
<td>131072 Tuned Scaling Range Upper Limit: Turbonomic uses this range to set up tuned scaling Actions for the VM (see VM Actions (page 240)). For an overview of tuned scaling, see Tuned Scaling Action Settings (page 234).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMEM Min Size (MB)</td>
<td>512 Tuned Scaling Range Lower Limit:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Setting Up Business Rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Turbonomic uses this range to set up tuned scaling actions for the VM (see [VM Actions](page 240)). For an overview of tuned scaling, see [Tuned Scaling Action Settings](page 234).</td>
<td>Turbonomic uses this range to set up tuned scaling actions for the VM (see [VM Actions](page 240)). For an overview of tuned scaling, see [Tuned Scaling Action Settings](page 234).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Sustained Utilization (public cloud, only)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The percentage of VCPU utilization for a VM to indicate that the VM is being utilized by the applications it hosts. For example, a VM can show VCPU utilization to maintain the Guest OS, even though the application it hosts is idle. To enable actions on the cloud even though some utilization is present on the VM, set this to a value greater than zero. Turbonomic recommends that you only use this setting to guarantee suspension of VMs at a scheduled time. For information on this use case, see [Scheduling VM Suspend Actions in the Public Cloud](page 277).</td>
<td>The percentage of VCPU utilization for a VM to indicate that the VM is being utilized by the applications it hosts. For example, a VM can show VCPU utilization to maintain the Guest OS, even though the application it hosts is idle. To enable actions on the cloud even though some utilization is present on the VM, set this to a value greater than zero. Turbonomic recommends that you only use this setting to guarantee suspension of VMs at a scheduled time. For information on this use case, see [Scheduling VM Suspend Actions in the Public Cloud](page 277).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Scaling Constraints

Scaling constraints include settings that specify how Turbonomic takes actions to resize a VM. These settings include:

- **Resize Increments:**
  These increments specify how many units to add or subtract when resizing the given resource allocation for a VM. For example, it makes sense to change VMem by steps of 1024 MB at a time, but for VStorage it’s better to make changes by 0.5 GB steps.

  The following table shows the default settings for the Resize increments:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Increment constant for VDC Mem Allocation [MB]</td>
<td>1024</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increment constant for VMEM[MB]</td>
<td>1024</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increment constant for Storage Amount [GB]</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increment constant for VDC Storage Allocation [GB]</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increment constant for VCPU [MHz]</td>
<td>1800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increment constant for VStorage [GB]</td>
<td>999999</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Attribute

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Increment constant for VDC CPU Allocation [MHz]</td>
<td>1800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increment constant for Heap [MB]</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For resize increments, you should consider the following:

- **For VMem**, you should not set the increment value to be lower than what is necessary for the VM to operate. If the VMem increment is too low, then it’s possible that Turbonomic would allocate insufficient VMem for the machine to operate. For a VM that is under utilized, Turbonomic will reduce VMem allocation by the increment amount, but it will not leave a VM with zero VMem. For example, if you set this to 1024, then Turbonomic cannot reduce the VMem to less than 1024 MB.

- **For VCPU**, the increment affects resize of VCPU limits and reservations in MHz, and it also affects the addition/removal of cores for VCPU capacity on a VM.

  For limits and reservations, Turbonomic recommends changes in terms of the specified resize increment. For example, assume the increment is 1800 MHz and you have reserved 3000 MHz for a VM. Turbonomic could recommend to reduce the reservation by 1800, down to 1200 MHz.

  For VCPUs, Turbonomic can only resize allocation one core at a time. This means a resize is to the nearest core count that matches or exceeds the resize increment. Assume the cores all have a clock speed of 2000 MHz. If the resize increment is 1800 MHz, then a resize up will recommend to add one more core at 2000 MHz.

- **For VStorage**, the default setting is very high to disable resize actions. This is usually preferred because VStorage resize requires that you reformat the storage.

### Rate of Resize

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rate of Resize</td>
<td>2 (Medium)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When resizing resources for a VM, Turbonomic calculates the optimal values for VMem, VCPU and VStorage. But it does not necessarily make a change to that value in one action. Turbonomic uses the Rate of Resize setting to determine how to make the change in a single action, as follows:

- **Low**

  Change the value by one increment, only. For example, if the resize action calls for increasing VMem, and the increment is set at 1024, Turbonomic increases VMem by 1024 MB.

- **Medium**

  Change the value by an increment that is 1/4 of the difference between the current value and the optimal value. For example, if the current VMem is 2 GB and the optimal VMem is 10 GB, then Turbonomic will raise VMem to 4 GB (or as close to that as the increment constant will allow).

- **High**

  Change the value to be the optimal value. For example, if the current VMem is 2 GB and the optimal VMem is 8 GB, then Turbonomic will raise VMem to 8 GB (or as close to that as the increment constant will allow).

### Aggressiveness
### Setting Up Business Rules

#### Attribute | Default Value
--- | ---
Aggressiveness | 95th Percentile

When evaluating VCPU and VMEM performance, Turbonomic considers resource utilization as a percentage of capacity. The utilization drives actions to scale the available capacity either up or down. To measure utilization in the public cloud, the analysis considers a given utilization percentile. For example, assume a 95th percentile. The percentile utilization is the highest value that 95% of the observed samples fall below. However, average utilization is the average of all the observed samples.

Using a percentile, Turbonomic can recommend more relevant actions. This is especially important in the cloud, so that analysis can better exploit the elasticity of the cloud.

For example, consider decisions to reduce the capacity for CPU on a VM. For on-prem entities, Turbonomic never resizes below the recognized peak utilization. For most VMs there are moments when peak CPU reaches high levels. Assume utilization for a VM peaked at 100% just once. On-prem resizing does not use a percentile, and Turbonomic will not reduce allocated CPU for that VM.

For calculations on the public cloud, instead of using the single highest utilization value, Turbonomic uses a percentile. For the above example, assume a single CPU burst to 100%, but for 95% of the samples CPU never exceeded 50%. If you set **Aggressiveness** to 95th Percentile, then Turbonomic can see this as an opportunity to reduce CPU allocation for the VM.

In summary, a percentile evaluates the sustained resource utilization, and ignores bursts that occurred for a small portion of the samples. You can think of this as aggressiveness of resizing, as follows:

- **100th Percentile** – The least aggressive, recommended for critical workloads that need maximum guaranteed performance at all times.
- **95th Percentile (Default)** – The recommended setting to achieve maximum performance and savings.
- **90th Percentile** – The most aggressive, recommended for non-production workloads that can stand higher resource utilization.

#### Max Observation Period

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Max Observation Period</td>
<td>Last 30 Days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To refine the calculation of resource utilization on the public cloud, you can set the sample time to consider. Turbonomic uses historical data from up to the number of days that you specify as a sample period. (If the database has fewer days' data then it uses all of the stored historical data.)

A shorter period means there are fewer data points to account for when Turbonomic calculates utilization percentiles. This results in more dynamic, elastic resizing, while a longer period results in more stable or less elastic resizing. You can make the following settings:

- **Less Elastic** – Last 90 Days
- **Recommended** – Last 30 Days
- **More Elastic** – Last 7 Days

#### Excluded Templates
Use this setting to ensure that a scope of VMs only uses the templates you want.

There are certain environments that use templates to specify the resource allocations for a VM or other workload. Public cloud environments such as AWS or Azure use templates, and some private cloud environments use templates also.

For example, assume you need to add memory to a VM. For VMs running on hypervisors, Turbonomic calculates the amount of memory to add, and can then use the hypervisor’s API to add exactly that memory to the VM. In a template-based environment, Turbonomic chooses the template that most closely meets the resize requirements and applies that template to the VM.

For a given scope, you might want to make sure that the VMs never use certain templates. For example, you might want to exclude templates for cost or licensing reasons. You can add those templates to this setting, and any VMs in the policy's scope will not use those templates for a resize.

**NOTE:**
In public cloud environments, both resize and move actions use templates. This setting excludes the named templates for all of these actions. Turbonomic will not use an excluded template for move or resize action. In addition, if you exclude a template for a scope, but some workloads already use that template, then Turbonomic will recommend moving the workload off of that excluded template.

This policy setting affects both real-time actions and actions in a plan. The default setting is No Exclusions.

• **Consistent Resizing**

When you turn on Consistent Resizing for a group of VMs, Turbonomic resizes all the group members to the same size, such that they all support the top utilization of each resource commodity in the group. For example, assume VM A shows top utilization of CPU, and VM B shows top utilization of memory. A resize action would result in all the VMs with CPU capacity to satisfy VM A, and memory capacity to satisfy VM B.

For an affected resize, the Actions List shows individual resize actions for each of the VMs in the group. If you automate resizes, Turbonomic executes each resize individually in a way that avoids disruption to your workloads. Note that Turbonomic categorizes these resizes as Compliance actions.

Use this setting to enforce the same template across all VMs in a group when resizing VMs on the public cloud. In this way, Turbonomic can enforce a rule to size all the VMs in a group equally.

**NOTE:**
When working with Consistent Resizing, consider these points:

◦ You should not mix VMs in a group that has a Consistent Resizing policy, with other groups that enable Consistent Resizing. One VM can be a member of more than one group. If one VM (or more) in a group with Consistent Resizing is also in another group that has Consistent Resizing, then both groups enforce Consistent Resizing together, for all their group members. Also, for any group of VMs that enables Consistent Resizing, you should not mix the associated target technologies. For example, one group should not include VMs that are managed on both Azure and AWS platforms, or VMs that are on Azure and vCenter platforms.

◦ Charts that show actions and risks assign the same risk statement to all the affected VMs. This can seem confusing. For example, assume one VM needs to resize to address vCPU risk, and 9 other VMs are set to resize consistently with it. Then charts will state that 10 VMs need to resize to address vCPU risks.

◦ Finally, you should never turn this setting on for the default VM policy.

In public cloud environments, Turbonomic discovers groups of VMs that should keep all their VMs on the same template. Turbonomic discovers these groups and automatically enables Consistent Resizing across all the VMs in
each group. Note that you can modify the policies that Turbonomic assigns to a discovered group, and your changes will remain in effect for subsequent rounds of discovery. The details of this discovery vary depending on the Cloud Provider:

- **Azure**
  
  To provide redundancy to an application, you can group two or more VMs in an Availability Set. Turbonomic discovers these sets and automatically enables Consistent Resizing across all the affected VMs. In addition, Turbonomic discovers the VM templates that are not viable for the Availability Set, and adds template exclusion to the policy for the discovered group.

  You can choose to execute all the actions for such a group, either manually or automatically. In that case, Turbonomic executes the resizes one VM at a time. Note that if you do not need to resize all the members of a given Availability Set to a consistent template, you can disable Consistent Resize for the corresponding group.

- **AWS**

  AWS Autoscaling defines groups of VMs that adjust their capacity in sync. Turbonomic discovers these groups and automatically enables Consistent Resizing across all the VMs in the group.

  If you select one or all actions for the group either manually or automatically, Turbonomic will change the Launch Configuration for the Autoscaling Group but it will not terminate the EC2 instances. To completely change the size of all members of the Autoscaling Group, you must implement additional action orchestration. To do this, you can use Action Scripts, or other orchestration (see Creating Action Scripts (page 251) and Setting Up Action Orchestration (page 248)).

  Note that you cannot change the default Consistent Resizing for members of an AWS Autoscaling Group.

Reasons to employ Consistent Resizing for a group include:

- **Load Balancing**
  
  If you have deployed load balancing for a group, then all the VMs in the group should experience similar utilization. In that case, if one VM needs to be resized, then it makes sense to resize them all consistently.

- **High Availability (HA)**

  A common HA configuration on the public cloud is to deploy mirror VMs to different availability zones, where the given application runs on only one of the VMs at a given time. The other VMs are on standby to recover in failover events. Without Consistent Resizing, Turbonomic would tend to size down or suspend the unused VMs, which would make them unready for the failover situation.

- **Instance Store Aware Scaling**

  For AWS environments:

  The template for your workload determines whether the workload can use an instance store, and it determines the instance store capacity. As Turbonomic calculates a resize or move action, it can recommend a new template that does not support instance stores, or that does not provide the same instance store capacity.

  To ensure that resize actions respect the instance store requirements for your workloads, turn on Instance Store Aware Scaling for a given VM or for a group of VMs. When you turn this on for a given scope of VMs, then as it calculates move and resize actions, Turbonomic will only consider templates that support instance stores. In addition, it will not move a workload to a template that provides less instance store capacity.
Policy Examples

Policies provide a way to affect Turbonomic analysis so that the recommended actions satisfy your requirements. These examples show some common requirements you can set up.

Scheduling VM Suspend Actions in the Public Cloud

To save money in the public cloud, Turbonomic can identify VMs for you to suspend. Assume the utilization on a VM falls below a minimum at regular times. In that case, you can schedule Turbonomic to suspend it during those times. In this way you can avoid paying for resources that are not in use. To enable these VM suspend actions, you must set up policies on the affected applications as well as the VMs that host those applications.

To schedule suspend actions for VMs on the cloud, you will create two Automation Policies that work together. These policies identify which applications can be suspended, and when the underlying VMs are not be utilized by their given applications. Briefly, the policies are:

- **Applications Policy**
  A policy to set the priorities of the applications to Normal. By default, applications have a priority of Mission Critical. For Turbonomic to suspend a VM, the hosted application must have a Normal priority.
  
  For general information about application policies, see [Analysis Policies: Applications (page 256)](#).

- **VM Policy**
  A policy to automate Suspend and Start actions, and to set the Minimum Sustained Utilization for the given VMs. By default, Suspend and Start are disabled, so you must enable them in this policy.
  
  Minimum Sustained Utilization sets the percentage of VCPU utilization for a VM to indicate that the VM is no longer being utilized by the applications it hosts. To ensure that Turbonomic will suspend the VMs at the scheduled time, (when the applications are set to a Normal priority) you will give Minimum Sustained Utilization a high value – 90%.
  
  For general information about VM policies, see [Analysis Policies: VMs (page 269)](#).

To create the Applications Automation Policy:

1. Create a new Automation Policy.
   
   Navigate to **Settings > Policies** and click **New Automation Policy**. For the policy type, choose Application. Give the policy a descriptive name.

2. Set the policy scope.
   
   To set the policy scope, first create a group that contains the applications you want to control. Note that you must create the group – you cannot use any groups that have been discovered by Turbonomic. For information about creating groups, see [Creating Groups (page 206)](#).
   
   Once you have created the group, use it as the policy scope.

3. Set the application priority to Normal for this policy.
   
   In the policy fly-out, expand the Application Priorities section and add a priority control. Then set it to **Normal**.
Note that you might later decide these applications really are critical. In that case, you can set their priority back to Mission Critical. When you do, Turbonomic recognizes the change of priority, and powers up any suspended VMs in that scope.

4. Optionally, set a schedule window for this policy.
   In the policy fly-out, expand the Schedule section and add a schedule.
   For some application groups, you might know that they are inactive during specific times. For example, the applications might always be inactive over the weekend, or for certain times during the day. In that case, you can define a schedule for the policy to set the applications to Normal during down times, and back to Mission Critical when you want to guarantee they are available. When the schedule sets that application priorities to Critical, Turbonomic actions will turn on any underlying VMs that have been suspended.
   For more scheduling information, see About Policy Schedules (page 230).

5. Save the policy.

To create the Virtual Machines Automation Policy:

1. Create a new Automation Policy.
   Navigate to Settings > Policies and click New Automation Policy. For the policy type, choose Virtual Machine. Give the policy a descriptive name.

2. Set the policy scope.
   The first step is to identify the scope of VMs you want to affect. You can use groups that Turbonomic discovers. For example, you can use a group of all the VMs in a given region or zone, or all the VMs for a given cloud target. You can also create your own group. To be more precise, you can create groups of VMs to match your application groups. Once you identify the group or groups you want, use your groups to set the policy scope.

3. Set the Minimum Sustained Utilization for these VMs.
   In the policy fly-out, expand the Operational Constraints section and add Minimum Sustained Utilization. Specify a value of 90.
   This setting gives a percentage of VCPU utilization for a VM that indicates whether the VM is being utilized by the applications it hosts. Note that a VM can show utilization of VCPU to maintain the Guest OS, even though the application it hosts is idle. For this use case we want to guarantee that Turbonomic will suspend the VMs that the time you scheduled in the Applications policy. To accomplish this, we set Minimum Sustained Utilization to 90%.

4. Set the action modes for the Suspend and Start actions.
   You can set these actions to Automated or Manual. If you want to test these policies out before automating, set them to Manual and check your pending actions during the scheduled times. For information about these action settings, see Setting Action Modes (page 234).
   In the policy fly-out, expand the Action Automation section and add the following actions:
   • Suspend – This enables Turbonomic to suspend any VM in scope if the application it hosts has a priority of Normal, and if the Minimum Sustained Utilization for the VM is below the percentage you have set.
   • Start – This ensures Turbonomic will restart suspended VMs when the application policy makes a scheduled change to set application priorities back to Critical.

5. Save the policy.
After you make these two policies, Turbonomic will identify applications that do not consume resources during the scheduled window, and drive suspend actions on the underlying VMs. When the schedule window closes, Turbonomic will restart those VMs.

**Fine Tune VM Resize Calculations for the Public Cloud**

Turbonomic analysis generates resize actions to change allocated capacity so that it better meets demand. In public cloud environments, to resize a VM you actually move the VM to a different template. The list of templates that's available depends on the cloud account, and the given region or availability zone. When Turbonomic calculates a VM resize, it looks for the template that best matches the desired values and moves the VM to that template.

To calculate the new capacity for a resize, Turbonomic uses Resize Increments. To improve template selection, you can adjust the VCPU resize increment to better match the CPU offerings in the available templates.

The default resize increment for VCPU is 1800 MHz. To fine tune resizing, set this to a lower value. You can look at the templates in your accounts, and set this increment to the lowest common denominator among them.

Note that Resize Increment is a global setting for all VMs in your environment, both on-prem and on the public cloud. For more information, see [Scaling Constraints](page 272) in "Analysis Policies: VMs".

**Identifying Wasted Storage on the Public Cloud**

Full management of storage on the public cloud includes identifying wasted storage. Wasted storage is any disk space devoted to files that are not required for operations of the workloads in your cloud environment. It can indicate opportunities for you to free up disk space, and reduce your overall cloud costs.

To enable the management of wasted storage, create a policy for your cloud storage. Then under Storage Settings add the **Disable Datastore Browsing** setting, and then turn it off. Turbonomic disables datastore browsing by default, so you must add this setting to enable wasted storage management. You can also specify directories or files to ignore so that the datastore browsing does not consider these files to be wasted storage. For more information, see [Storage Settings](page 267).

To apply this policy to your cloud storage, you must set a scope to the policy. Turbonomic discovers groups of storage by cloud provider or cloud region. You can use these discovered groups to set the scope, or you can create your own groups of storage.
Templates: Resource Allocations for New Entities

Turbonomic uses templates to describe new entities that it will deploy in your environment or in plans. The templates specify resource allocations for these entities. For example, you can run a plan that adds new VMs to a cluster. If you add ten copies of a template, then the plan places ten new VMs that match the resource allocation you have specified for the given template.

A VM template definition can include one or more images that Turbonomic uses to deploy the VM in your environment. The image identifies the actual deployment package:

- To deploy on-prem, a path to the physical files (for example an OVA)
- For cloud deployments, the cloud provider’s named VM image (for AWS, the AMI)

As you deploy an instance of a VM template, Turbonomic chooses the best image for that instance. For cloud deployments, this includes finding the machine image configuration that best matches the template configuration.

The Template Catalog shows all of the templates that have been specified or discovered for your installation of Turbonomic. From this page, you can also create new templates and edit existing ones.

Creating Templates

Templates specify the resources for entities that Turbonomic can deploy in your environment, or in plans.
A VM template definition can include one or more images that Turbonomic uses to deploy the VM in your environment. The image identifies the actual deployment package:

- To deploy on-prem, a path to the physical files (for example an OVA)
- For cloud deployments, the cloud provider's named VM image (for AWS, the AMI)

As you deploy an instance of a VM template, Turbonomic chooses the best image for that instance. For cloud deployments, this includes finding the machine image configuration that best matches the template configuration.

The Template Catalog shows all of the templates that have been specified or discovered for your installation of Turbonomic. From this page, you can also create new templates and edit existing ones.

**Creating and Editing Templates**

To create a new template, navigate to the Template Catalog and click **NEW TEMPLATE**. To edit a template, click the template's name. When you create a new template, the first step is to choose the entity type.

1. Navigate to the Settings Page.
2. Choose Templates.
3. Create or edit a template
   - To create a new template, navigate to the Template Catalog and click **NEW TEMPLATE**. To edit a template, click the template's name.
4. If you're creating a new template, choose the entity type.
5. Make the settings for your template.
   - For each type of template, you set allocations for different resources. You can make templates of the following types:
     - Virtual Machine
     - Host

   ![New Template Dialog]

   `[Image of New Template Dialog]`
• Storage
• Container

6. Make the settings for your template, and then save your changes.

   When the template window opens, it displays the most common resource settings. You can expand the settings to see the full collection for that template type.

7. Save your changes.

   After you have made your settings and named the template, click CREATE or SAVE.

VM Template Settings

A VM template describes the resource allocation that you want to provide for a type of VMs. When Turbonomic deploys the associated VM to your environment or in a plan, it uses these values to determine the size of the VM. Turbonomic uses the Size settings to calculate the best placement for a VM of this type.

A VM template can optionally include an image description. When Turbonomic uses the template to deploy a VM to your environment, it uses the image to access the actual bits that install as the VM instance.

VM Size

• CPU

   The virtual CPUs assigned to the VM. Specify the number of Cores and the VCPU clock speed – Turbonomic multiplies these values to calculate the host CPU resources it will allocate when placing the VM.

   The Utilization value sets the percentage of allocated CPU that the placed VM will consume. To ensure the host has left over resources for infrastructure tasks, you should assign less than 100%.

• Memory

   The amount of memory to allocate for the VM, in MB.

   The Utilization value sets the percentage of allocated memory that the placed VM will consume. To ensure the host has left over resources for infrastructure tasks, you should assign less than 100%.

   Note that you should never allocate less memory than is required for the VM’s guest OS.

• Storage

   The storage resources to allocate for this VM.

   ◦ disk/rdm – If you choose rdm, then the VM can use VMware Raw Device Mapping for its storage.

   ◦ IOPS – The capacity for IO operations you give the VM for this datastore.

   ◦ Size – The amount of storage capacity, in GB.

   The Utilization value sets the percentage of allocated memory that the placed VM will consume. To ensure the storage has left over resources for infrastructure tasks, you should assign less than 100%.

   Note that you can allocate multiple datastores to the VM.
Setting Up Business Rules

- **Network**
  The amount of the host’s network throughput to assign to the VM, in Mb/s.

- **IO**
  The amount of throughput on the host’s IO bus to assign to the VM, in Mb/s

**VM Image**

To support VM deployment based on the template, you can specify one or more images. The image is the actual deployment package for that VM. To add images to the template, show the IMAGE tab, and click **Add Image**. Turbonomic displays a list of the datacenters and cloud regions that it has discovered. Choose from that list to add it to the template's images.

After you choose the datacenter or region, you then specify:

- For On-Prem Deployment – The path to the image files in that datacenter
- For Cloud Deployment – The name of the image for that cloud region
Storage Template Settings

Storage templates describe models of storage that you can deploy in the on-prem datacenter. As part of capacity planning, you might want to see how to replace your current storage with different models. To do that, you create templates to represent the storage you want, and then use those templates when running hardware replacement plans.

The storage template is a collection of these settings:

- **Storage**
  - The capacity for this storage.
  - **IOPS** – The capacity for IO operations on this storage.
  - **Size** – The amount of storage capacity, in GB.

- **Price**
  If you know the price of the storage model that you're specifying for the template, you can enter it here. When running a plan, Turbonomic can use the price to calculate costs or savings when adding or removing storage in an on-prem datacenter.

Container Template Settings

A container template describes the resource allocation that you want to provide for a type of containers. When Turbonomic deploys the associated container to your environment or in a plan, it uses these values to determine its size. Turbonomic uses these settings to calculate the best placement for a container of this type.

The container template is a collection of these settings:

- **CPU**
  - The VM's CPU capacity to allocate to this container, in MHz.

- **Memory**
  - The amount of memory to allocate for the container, in MB.

- **Storage**
  - The storage resources to allocate for this container.

- **Network**
  - The amount of the host's network throughput to assign to the VM, in Mb/s.

- **IO**
  - The amount of the host VM's IO throughput to assign to the container, in Mb/s
Email and Trap Notifications

Turbonomic is designed to manage your environment in real time. If conditions arise in your environment that prevent Turbonomic from collecting the data it needs, or from executing control actions on the entities in your environment, then it posts notifications to the user interface to alert you to such problems. If Turbonomic control is especially critical for certain scopes in your environment, you can set up email and SNMP trap notifications to alert you to any issues that arise within those scopes.

For example, you can set up a notification to your email address whenever there’s a discovery problem within a specific scope of hosts, or an SNMP trap to your network management application whenever there’s a monitoring problem on specific storage.

To set up these notifications, you perform two steps:

- Make **Email Settings** to set up your SMTP relay, declare a "From" address for emails from Turbonomic, and set up the formats of notification emails.
- Make **Notification Settings** to configure the notifications you want to receive for specific scopes of entities in your environment.

Email Settings

The first step for preparing email notifications is to configure email handling in Turbonomic.

1. Navigate to the Settings Page.
   
   ![Settings](image)
   
   Click to navigate to the Settings Page. From there, you can perform a variety of Turbonomic configuration tasks.

2. Choose Email and Trap Notifications.
   
   ![Email And Trap Notifications](image)
   
   Click to navigate to the Email and Trap Notifications Page.
   
   This page has a tab to configure **Email Settings** and a tab to configure **Notification Settings**.

3. Display the Email Settings tab.
   
   From here, you can configure:
   
   - SMTP Relay Settings
   - General Email Settings
   - Email Content Format
Setting Up Business Rules

SMTP Relay Settings

The SMTP Relay fields identify the mail relay server you use on your network to enable email communication from Turbonomic. The relay you set up here enables emails from notifications, as well as emails to send reports to subscribers.

General Email Settings

Use this setting to specify the return address (the FROM address) for emails that Turbonomic generates and sends. This setting affects email notifications as well as emails for report subscriptions.

Email Content Format

To define message content, enter format variables and line breaks to determine what the message will include. For example, the following message format:

```
{6}: {5} \nDatastores: {9}\nTarget: {7}\nEvent: {0} - {4}\nCategory: {1}\nSeverity: {2}
```

Results in the following email message:

PhysicalMachine: myMachine.corp.mydomain.com
Datastores: No value
Target: 10.10.111.111
Event: WorkloadBalance - Improve Physical Machine workload distribution for hp-esx28.c
orp.turbonomic.com
Category: Workload Placement  
Severity: MINOR  
State: NOTIFY  

The message format variables for a message are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{0}</td>
<td>Event type - The problem name. For example, “WorkloadBalance”.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| {1}      | Sub category - One of:  
• Performance Bottlenecks  
• Storage Management  
• Workload Placement  
• Green IT  
• Configuration Management  
• Over Provisioning  
• Capacity Management |
| {2}      | Severity - One of:  
• Critical  
• Major  
• Minor |
| {3}      | State - Can be NOTIFY or CLEAR. |
| {4}      | Description - A full description of the notification issue. |
| {5}      | Affected entity - The name of the VM, host, or datastore associated with the problem. |
| {6}      | Class name - The type of device that registers this problem. Can be one of:  
• VirtualMachine  
• PhysicalMachine  
• Datastore |
Setting Up Business Rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(7)</td>
<td>Target - The IP address or name of the hypervisor that manages the affected devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(8)</td>
<td>Host name - The name of the physical machine that hosts the affected VM. This variable only applies to VM problem notifications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(9)</td>
<td>Datastore names - The names of the data stores that serve the affected Host or VM. This variable only applies to VM and Host problem notifications.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notification Settings

To set up a notification, you set its scope, choose the issues to notify and their severity, and then set where to deliver the notification. For example, you can notify specific team members of issues on their critical storage infrastructure. To set the scope, you assign the notification to a group. You can use discovered groups as well as any custom groups defined in your environment. For information about defining custom groups, see Creating Groups (page 206).

To specify notifications in Turbonomic:

1. Navigate to the Settings Page.

   ![Settings](Image)

   Click to navigate to the Settings Page. From there, you can perform a variety of Turbonomic configuration tasks.

2. Choose Email and Trap Notifications.

   ![Email And Trap Notifications](Image)

   Click to navigate to the Email and Trap Notifications Page.

   This page has a tab to configure Email Settings and a tab to configure Notification Settings.

3. Display the Notifications Settings tab.

   This tab displays a list of notifications that you have already set up. You can also create new notifications.
Viewing Saved Notifications

The **Notifications Settings** tab displays a list of all the notifications that are currently configured for your environment. Each notification is listed by the group that defines the notification scope.

To edit a notification click its name and make the changes you want.

To delete a notification, select the entry and click the **DELETE** icon.

Creating a Notification

To create a notification:

1. Click New Notifications.

2. The **Choose Group Type** flyout displays.

   Set the scope of the notification.
The first step when creating a notification is to set the scope. To do this, you choose the entity type, and then you choose a group of those entities. Turbonomic will monitor the entities of this scope to generate the notifications you specify.

After you choose a group for the notification scope, the Notification Settings flyout displays.

3. Configure the notification.
In the Notification Settings flyout, display the tab for the type of notification you want to create:

- **Email Notifications**
  Turbonomic generates an email message and sends it to the email addresses you provide. The notification uses the email format that you specified for notifications on this type of entity (see Email Settings (page 285)).

- **SNMP Trap Notifications**
  Turbonomic sends a trap notification to the IP address that you provide. These notifications arrive at port 162.

For **Issue Type**, you set category of events that will trigger the notification:

- **Problem** - Issues Turbonomic identifies for the entities within your virtual environment.
- **Discovery** - Issues that occur as Turbonomic performs discovery on your environment.
- **Monitoring** - Issues that affect Turbonomic as it monitors your environment
- **Control** - Issues that affect Turbonomic as it performs recommended actions

**Severity** sets the notification level - Critical only, Critical and Major, or Critical Major and Minor.

**Notify States** sets whether to notify when the event occurs, when it is cleared, or both.
Administrative Tasks

To perform Turbonomic administrative tasks, you will navigate to different pages from **Settings**. The different tasks you can perform for Turbonomic include:

- **Managing User Accounts (page 292)**
  Create and manage user accounts for Turbonomic.

- **Maintenance: Proxies, Logging, and Troubleshooting (page 301)**
  Perform general tasks such as managing HTTP proxies or sending troubleshooting data to Support.

- **Updating Turbonomic (page 303)**
  See your current version, check the availability of update versions, and perform online updates.

- **License Configuration (page 304)**
  Review the status of your current license, and apply any license upgrades.

Managing User Accounts

As an administrator, you specify accounts that grant users specific access to Turbonomic. User accounts determine the following for a given user login:

- **User Authentication**
  To configure an account, you set the type of authentication the account will use:
  - Local User – Configure the username and password and save those credentials on the Turbonomic server.
  - External User – Single user accounts that authenticate through Single Sign-on (SSO) or through Microsoft Active Directory (AD).
  - External Group – User group accounts that authenticate through SSO or AD.
• User Authorization
  Properties that determine the range of access and features for a given user:
  ◦ Role – Access to specific Turbonomic features
  ◦ Type – Dedicated user or tenant on a virtual datacenter
  ◦ Scope – How much of the environment this user can manage

As you configure user accounts, you can set up access to specific clusters in your environment. You can even set up accounts for tenant customers, and only show them the virtual workloads they own in their specific virtual datacenters.

IMPORTANT:
You can configure Turbonomic to use SSO authentication. When SSO is enabled, Turbonomic only permits logins via the SSO IdP. Whenever you navigate to your Turbonomic installation, it redirects you to the SSO Identity Provider (IdP) for authentication before displaying the Turbonomic user interface.

Before you enable SSO for your Turbonomic installation, you must configure at least one SSO user with Turbonomic administrator privileges. If you do not, then once you enable SSO you will not be able to configure any SSO users in Turbonomic. To authorize an SSO user as an administrator, use EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATION to do one of the following:

• Configure a single SSO user with administrator authorization.
  Add an external user. The username must match an account that is managed by the IdP.

• Configure an SSO user group with administrator authorization.
  Add an external group. The group name must match a user group on the IdP, and that group must have at least one member.

For information about configuring SSO user groups in SAML, see Configuring a Group for SSO Authentication (page 299). For information about configuring SSO authentication for Turbonomic, see "Single Sign-On Authentication" in the Turbonomic Installation Guide.

To work with Turbonomic accounts:

1. Navigate to the Settings Page.

   ![Settings Icon]

   Click to navigate to the Settings Page. From there, you can perform a variety of Turbonomic configuration tasks.

2. Choose User Management.

   ![User Management Icon]

   Click to navigate to the User Management Page.
This page lists all the user accounts that you currently have configured for Turbonomic. You can:

- Click to manage LOCAL USERS or EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATION
- Select an entry to delete the account
- Click a name to edit the account
- Create new user or group account
- Configure Active Directory settings

3. Filter the list of users.

To work with a long list of users, you can filter by role (for example, only show administrator or only show observer users). You can also type a string in the Search field to filter the list, and you can sort the list by name.

4. Work with Local user accounts.
Turbonomic stores local accounts and their credentials on the Turbonomic platform. Local authentication is for individual users, only.

When you choose **LOCAL USERS**, Turbonomic displays a list of all the local user accounts you have configured for this installation.

5. **Create or edit a local user account.**

   To add a new local user, click **ADD LOCAL USER**. To edit an existing account, click the account name in the list. To configure a local account, specify:

   - **Authentication:**
Provide the username and password. Turbonomic stores these credentials on the local server.

- **Authorization – User Role:**
  - Observer — Can view the state of the environment and see actions, but cannot execute actions and cannot run plans.
  - Advisor — Can run plans, but cannot execute actions or deploy workloads.
  - Automator — Can execute actions and deploy workloads, but cannot perform administrative tasks.
  - Deployer — Can view all Turbonomic charts and data, can use Place to deploy workloads, and can create policies and templates. However, this role cannot run plans or execute any recommended actions.
  - Administrator — Can access all Turbonomic features, and can perform administrative tasks to configure the Turbonomic platform.
  - Shared Observer/Advisor — Shared roles are for tenant users who are focused on a subset of the virtual environment. For example, a service provider would create a shared account for a customer who has purchased a set virtual of resources. Shared users can only have the Observer and Advisor roles. In addition, a Shared user account must be scoped (see next).

- **Authorization – Scope (optional)**
  The scope limits what the user can monitor. For example, you can scope to a group that contains only the physical machines that support this user’s VMs or applications. Click DEFINE SCOPE and choose which groups or clusters this user can see.

6. Work with **EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATION** to set up SSO or AD accounts.

For External Authentication, you configure Turbonomic to use SSO or AD services to manage the credentials and authentication of users. You can create external accounts to authorize user groups or individual users.

**NOTE:**
If a user is a member of multiple groups, then Turbonomic logs the user on via the first SSO or AD group that successfully authenticates the user. Also note that Turbonomic does not support nested AD groups – AD logins must be for users in a top-level group.

To enable SSO, you must configure access to the given IdP. For information about configuring SSO, see "Single Sign-On Authentication" in the *Turbonomic Installation Guide*. 
To enable AD you must specify either an AD domain, an AD server, or both. Turbonomic uses this connection for all AD users.

7. Enable AD authentication.

To enable AD, click CONNECT TO AD and configure:

- **Active Directory Domain** – To authenticate AD groups, specify a domain so that AD can find a given user via the User Principal Name (UPN). If you specify a domain, but not a server, authentication uses any AD server from that domain.

- **Active Directory Server** – To disable AD groups, specify a server but do not specify a domain. If you specify a domain and a server, authentication will use that server, and will also support groups.

  When you configure an AD server, by default Turbonomic assumes the AD server port to be 389 or 636. To specify a custom port for the AD server, add the port number to the AD server IP address. For example, 10.10.10.123:444 sets port 444.

- **Secure** – Use a secure connection when communicating with AD servers. Note that the AD domain must be configured to use LDAPS, and you must have imported a certificate into the Turbonomic server. For more information, see "Enforcing Secure Access" in the *Turbonomic Installation Guide*.

8. Create or edit an SSO or AD account – This can be for a user group or for a single user.
Administrative Tasks

To add a new account, click **ADD EXTERNAL GROUP** or **ADD EXTERNAL USER**. To edit an existing account, click the account name. To configure an external account, specify:

- **Authentication:**
  - Provide the group or user name for this account. The name you provide must meet certain requirements, depending on the type of account you are creating:
    - SSO Group – Provide a name that matches a group the IdP manages.
    - AD Group – The group name must match a group that is accessible from the domain and servers that you configured in **EDIT AD**.
    - SSO User – Provide a user name that matches a user managed by the IdP.
    - AD User – The username must be a valid User Principal Name (UPN). For example, john@corp.mycompany.com.

- **Authorization – User Role:**
  - Observer — Can view the state of the environment, but cannot view or execute actions, and cannot run plans.
  - Advisor — Can run plans, but cannot execute actions or deploy workloads.
  - Automator — Can execute actions and deploy workloads, but cannot perform administrative tasks.
  - Deployer — Can view all Turbonomic charts and data, can use Place to deploy workloads, and can create policies and templates. However, this role cannot run plans or execute any recommended actions.
  - Administrator — Can access all Turbonomic features, and can perform administrative tasks to configure the Turbonomic platform.
Administrative Tasks

- Shared Observer/Advisor — Shared roles are for tenant users who are focused on a subset of the virtual environment. For example, a service provider would create a shared account for a customer who has purchased a set virtual of resources. Shared users can only have the Observer and Advisor roles. In addition, a Shared user account must be scoped (see next).

- Authorization – Scope (optional)
  The scope limits what members of this group can monitor. For example, you can scope to only the physical machines that support this group’s VMs or applications. Click DEFINE SCOPE and choose which entities this members of this group can see.

Configuring a Group for SSO Authentication

To use SSO authentication in Turbonomic, you should configure user groups on the IdP. The IdP can authenticate the group members, and then Turbonomic can assign the user role and scope according to that group’s authentication. To manage personnel changes, you only need to manage the membership in the IdP group. For example, if a user leaves your organization, you only need to remove the member from the group on the IdP. Because authorization on Turbonomic is by group, that user will not have any authorization settings stored on the Turbonomic server.

IMPORTANT:
Before you enable SSO for your Turbonomic installation, you must configure at least one SSO user with Turbonomic administrator privileges. If you do not, then once you enable SSO you will not be able to configure any SSO users in Turbonomic. To authorize an SSO user as an administrator, use EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATION to do one of the following:

- Configure a single SSO user with administrator authorization.
  Add an external user. The username must match an account that is managed by the IdP.

- Configure an SSO user group with administrator authorization.
  Add an external group. The group name must match a user group on the IdP, and that group must have at least one member.

For more information about configuring SSO authentication, see "Single Sign-On Authentication" in the Turbonomic Installation Guide.

Specifying a Group in the SAML Response

To support SSO, Turbonomic recognizes IdP responses that comply with SAML 2.0. To create user groups, for each user response you include an attribute named group, and give the group name as the attribute value. For example, assuming the following users, setting the group attribute for each user assigns that user to the appropriate group.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Users:</th>
<th>Group Attribute:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>George</td>
<td>Attribute Name=group, AttributeValue=Beatles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paul</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
As you specify the user response, to add the user to a group you include a group attribute. For example, to add a user to a group named turbo_admin_group, you would include the following attribute in that user’s SAML response:

```xml
<saml2:Attribute
    Name="group"
    NameFormat="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:attrname-format:unspecified">
    <saml2:AttributeValue
        xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
        xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
        xsi:type="xs:string">
        turbo_admin_group
    </saml2:AttributeValue>
</saml2:Attribute>
```

### Setting Group Authorization in Turbonomic

To set an account role and scope to a user group, you must use the group name that you specify as the value in the given SAML group attribute. In the above example, the group value is turbo_admin_group. To set authorization for that group:

1. Open the User Management page to EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATION.
   
   Navigate to **Settings > User Management**, and display the **EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATION** view.

2. Create a new External Group
   
   Click **ADD EXTERNAL GROUP**.

3. Provide the group name.
   
   *Be sure to use the name that you specify in the group attribute of the SAML response.* For the above example, use the name turbo_admin_group.

4. Specify the group’s authorization
For the above example, since this is turbo_admin_group, you should set the **ADMINISTRATOR** role, and you should not set any scope (grant full access to the environment).

After you configure this group in Turbonomic, then any member of turbo_admin_group that the IdP returns will have full administrator privileges on your Turbonomic installation.

### Maintenance: Proxies, Logging, and Troubleshooting

The Maintenance Options Page provides tools to load configuration files onto your Turbonomic installation, set logging levels, export data for technical support, and import diagnostic files from Technical Support. Many of tools are for advanced users. You should contact Turbonomic technical support before you use them.

To execute these actions, navigate to the Maintenance Options page:

1. Navigate to the Settings Page.

   ![Settings Page](image)

   Click to navigate to the Settings Page.

2. Choose Maintenance Options.

   ![Maintenance Options](image)

### HTTP Proxy

If your environment requires an HTTP proxy for Turbonomic to access the web, provide the credentials here.
Export State

If you are experiencing problems with Turbonomic, your support engineer might request that you export diagnostic data. You can export the data and then send it to the support engineer as requested.

Configuration Files

To help with diagnosis of some issues, a support engineer might want you to load configuration files into your Turbonomic server. You should only use these controls while working with a Turbonomic support engineer.

Logging Levels

You can set the level of logging for different components of the Turbonomic platform. You should be aware that setting more verbose logging levels increases the disk space required to store the log files. You normally change these settings only while you're working with a Turbonomic support engineer.

Usage Data and Analytics

With your permission, the Turbonomic platform can automatically collect analytics information from your installation and send it to Turbonomic to help improve our quality and performance. The data you share includes:

- Topology Data
  This information includes the types of targets you have set up, how many entities per target, and the relationships between these entities.

- Log Data
  Logs give us a history of any issues that might have occurred with your Turbonomic installation.

The data does not include any sensitive information such as user or target credentials. At weekly intervals, your Turbonomic platform collects and encrypts this data and sends it to Turbonomic.
NOTE:
When you first install and start Turbonomic, you have the option to enable this feature. At any time after you have enabled Usage Data and Analytics, you can always turn it off again.

To enable or disable this setting, navigate to Settings > Maintenance Options. Then turn on the option to enable sharing of user data, or turn the option off to disable it.

Updating Turbonomic

Use the Updates page to check whether any Turbonomic updates are available for your version, to see information about your version, and to perform online updates of your platform:

- **ABOUT**
  This shows the current version and build of your Turbonomic installation. It also lists the platform components by name and version.

- **CHECK**
  If Turbonomic can access the offline repository, and if the repository contains a version that is greater than your current version, this tells you that you can update to the indicated version.

- **UPDATE**
  If you can perform an online update to a new version, this executes the update. Be sure to give the update enough time to complete, and then refresh your browser.

NOTE:
Before updating your Turbonomic platform, you should create a snapshot of your current Turbonomic virtual machine. For complete update instructions, see the Installation Guide.

To navigate to the Updates page:

1. Navigate to the Settings Page.

   ![Settings](image)
   Click to navigate to the Settings Page.

2. Choose Updates.
License Configuration

To activate the full range of Turbonomic features, you must purchase the appropriate license. When you purchase the license, Turbonomic sends the license file to you in an e-mail message.

**NOTE:**
Starting with Turbonomic version 6.0, the basis for a license is the number of workloads that license supports. Earlier versions based their licenses on the number of sockets to support.

If you upgrade your Turbonomic product to version 6.1, you can still use your existing socket-based license to support the same environment. Turbonomic will continue to manage and control your workloads in that environment.

If you want to upgrade your license to support a larger environment, you must:

- Contact your sales representative to get the new license
  This license will be workload-based. Your sales representative will work with you to ensure that your new capacity equals your current capacity, plus the capacity you want to add on.
- Install the new license or licenses
  To install the new workload-based license, you must first delete the old socket-based license. Then you can install your new workload-based license.

In all circumstances, you should contact your sales representative to make sure that you get the correct license, and that you know how to install it properly.
A product license enables specific features as well as a specific number of workloads that you can manage. You can add additional licenses to Turbonomic as a way to increase the number of workloads you installation can manage. Note that as you add more licenses, they must all support the same feature set.

The License Configuration page shows you:

- The number of active workloads you can manage under this license
- How many workloads are currently active
- The set of features this license enables
- A list of current, active licenses

To navigate to the License Configuration page:

1. Navigate to the Settings Page.
2. Choose License.

To activate a license or to update your current license:

1. Obtain your license.
   Turbonomic sends the license file to you in an e-mail message. Save the license file on your local machine so you can upload it to your Turbonomic installation.
2. Apply the license to your Turbonomic installation.
   First click UPDATE LICENSE. Then browse to the license file that you saved and open it. Or you can drag the file into the Enter License fly-out.
   After you have uploaded the file, click SAVE.

After you have activated your license, you can then add more licenses to increase your workload coverage, or you can license a higher feature set.

**NOTE:**
As you apply new licenses to Turbonomic, you must be sure that they are for the same edition or feature set. If you try to apply an incompatible license file, Turbonomic displays an *Invalid Feature Set* error. To apply the new license you must either delete your current license so you can install the new feature set, or you must obtain a different license file that matches your current feature set.

After you install a new license, it is a good idea to clear your browser cache.

To increase your licensed workload coverage:

1. Obtain your additional license.
   Note that your additional licenses must match the feature set of your current license.
2. Apply the license to your Turbonomic installation.
To upgrade your license to a higher feature set:

1. Obtain your new license for the new features.
   You should obtain a license that supports at least the same number of workloads as your current license.

2. Delete your current license from Turbonomic.
   On the license page, select all the licenses that you currently have installed, then click DELETE.

3. Apply the license to your Turbonomic installation.